CITROËN

CITROËN JUMPY-DISPATCH SPACETOURER

HANDBOOK

INSPIRED BY YOU

Access to the Handbook

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

From the appropriate Store, download the **Scan MyCitroën** smartphone application.

Then select:
- the vehicle,
- the issue period corresponding to the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.

Download the content of the vehicle's **Handbook**.

The **Handbook** is available on the CITROËN website, in the "MyCitroën" section or at the following address: http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/

Select:
- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the issue period of your handbook corresponding to the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.

Access to the **Handbook**.

This symbol indicates the latest information available.

Welcome

Thank you for choosing a Citroën Jumpy/Dispatch or a Citroën SpaceTourer.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only. Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the guide.

If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

All of the operating instructions and recommendations are provided in detail there to make the most of your vehicle. It is strongly recommended that you familiarise yourself with it as well as the Maintenance and Warranty Guide, which provides information about the warranties, servicing and roadside assistance associated with the vehicle.

Key

Safety warning

Additional information

Contributes to the protection of the environment

Left-hand drive vehicle

Right-hand drive vehicle

Location of the equipment/button described with a black area

Key

This key allows the special features of the vehicle to be identified:

Van

Crew cab with mechanical child lock

Crew cab with electrical child lock

Combi, Business, Feel, Shine, Business Lounge

Overview

Instruments and controls 4
Labels 5

Eco-driving

1 Instruments

Instrument Panel 9
Indicators 23
Distance recorders 27
Lighting dimmer 27
Trip computer 28
Setting the time and date 29

2 Access

Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key, 31
Unlocking/Complete or selective unlocking 33
Back-up procedures 38
Central locking / unlocking 41
Electric sliding side door(s) 43
General recommendations for the sliding side doors 45
Hands-free sliding side door(s) 47
Side-hinged rear doors 49
Tailgate 50
Tailgate rear screen 50
Alarm 51
Electric windows 53

3 Ease of use and comfort

Correct driving position 54
Front seats 54
2-seat front bench seat 56
Steering wheel adjustment 58
Mirrors 59
Moduwork 60
Precautions for the seats and bench seats 63
Fixed one-piece bench seat 64
Fixed rear seat and bench seat 66
Rear seat and bench seat on rails 68
Individual rear seat(s) on rails 71
Crew cab, fixed 73
Crew cab, folding 74
Interior fittings 75
Loading area fittings 79
Seating area fittings 81
Panoramic sunroof 82
Retractable sliding table 83
Heating and Ventilation 86
Heating 87
Manual air conditioning 87
Dual-zone automatic air conditioning 88
Recirculation of interior air 90
Front demisting - defrosting 90
Rear screen and/or door mirrors demisting - defrosting 91
Rear heating - air conditioning 92
Additional Heating / Ventilation 92
Courtesy lamp(s) 95

4 Lighting and visibility

Lighting control stalk 97
Direction indicators 98
Daytime running lamps/Sidelamps 99
Automatic illumination of headlamps 99
Guide-me-home and welcome lighting 99
Cornering lighting 100
Automatic headlamp dipping 101
Manual headlamp beam height adjustment 102
Interior ambient lighting 102
Wiper control stalk 103
Automatic wiping 104
Changing a wiper blade 106

5 Safety

General safety recommendations 107
Hazard warning lamps 108
Emergency or assistance call 108
Audible warning 109
Electronic stability control (ESC) 109
Advanced Grip Control 112
Seat belts 113
Airbags 117
Child seats 120
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 122
ISOFIX child seats 129
Manual child lock 136
Electric child lock 136
Child lock on rear windows 137

Driving 6

Driving recommendations 138
Starting/switching off the engine 140
Parking brake 144
Hill start assist 144
5-speed manual gearbox 145
6-speed manual gearbox 145
Gear efficiency indicator 146
Automatic gearbox 146
Electronic gearbox 150
Stop & Start 152
Tyre under-inflation detection 154
Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations 156
Head-up display 158
Memorising speeds 159
Speed Limit recognition and recommendation 160
Speed limiter 162
Cruise control - particular recommendations 164
Cruise control 165
Adaptive Cruise Control 167
Active Safety Brake with Distance Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance 171
Lane departure warning system 174
Fatigue detection system 175
Blind Spot Detection 176
Parking sensors 178
Reversing camera, interior mirror 180
Top Rear Vision 180

Practical information 7

Compatibility of fuels 185
Refuelling 185
Diesel misfuel prevention 187
Snow chains 187
Towing device 188
Energy economy mode 189
Roof bars/Roof rack 189
Bonnet 190
Engine 191
Checking levels 191
Checks 194
AdBlue® (BlueHDi) 196
Advice on care 199

In the event of a breakdown 8

Warning triangle 200
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 200
Tool box 201
Temporary puncture repair kit 202
Spare wheel 206
Changing a bulb 211
Changing a fuse 217
12 V battery 219
Towing 222

Technical data 9

Engine technical data and towed loads 224
Dimensions 228
Identification markings 231

Alphabetical index

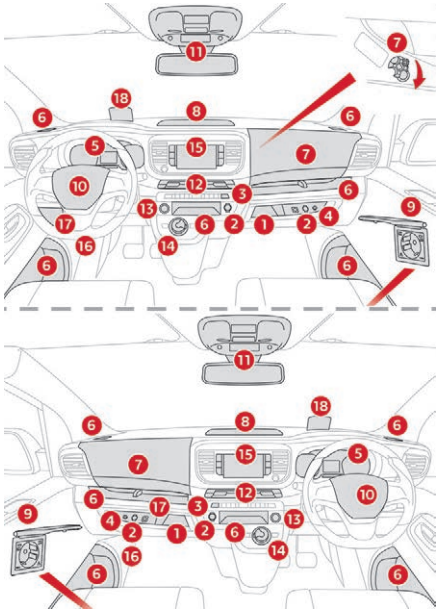
Audio equipment and telematics

Bluetooth audio system
CITROËN Connect Radio
CITROËN Connect Nav

Access to additional videos

bit.ly/helpPSA

Instruments and controls



1. Glove box
   Deactivation of the front passenger airbag (inside the glove box)
2. 12 V accessory socket (120 W)
   Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging the accessory
3. USB socket
4. JACK socket
5. Instrument panel
6. Storage compartments
   Cup or can holder
7. Cooled glove box (if the vehicle is so equipped)
   Via a ventilation nozzle, if opened, engine running and air conditioning on
8. Upper glove box
9. 220 V accessory socket (150 W, if the vehicle is so equipped)
   Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging the accessory.
10. Horn
11. Courtesy lamp
    Warning lamp display for seat belts and front passenger airbag
    Interior rear view mirror
    Surveillance mirror
    Emergency and assistance call buttons
12. Heating
    Manual air conditioning
    Dual-zone automatic air conditioning
    Front demisting - defrosting
    Rear screen demisting – defrosting
13. "START/STOP" button
14. Gearbox
15. Monochrome screen with audio system
    Touch screen with CITROËN Connect Radio or CITROËN Connect Nav
16. Bonnet release
17. Dashboard fuses
18. Head-up display

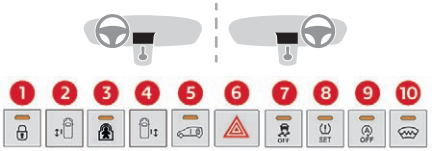
Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the storage compartments may be open or closed. This configuration is shown for illustrative purposes.

Steering mounted controls

1. External lighting/direction indicator controls
2. Wiper/screenwash/trip computer controls
3. Audio system adjustment controls (depending on version)

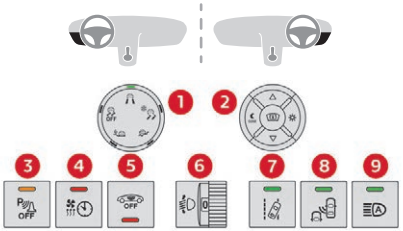
4. Controls for speed limiter/cruise control/ adaptive cruise control
5. Instrument panel display mode selection wheel
6. Voice synthesis control (depending on version)
   Volume adjustment (depending on version)
7. Audio system adjustment controls (depending on version)

Central switch panel



1. Locking/unlocking from the inside
2. Left-hand electric sliding side door
3. Electric child lock
4. Right-hand electric sliding side door
5. Cab/loading area selectivity
6. Hazard warning lamps
7. DSC/ASR system
8. Tyre under-inflation detection
9. Stop & Start
10. Heated windscreen

Side control bar



1. Grip control
2. Head-up display
3. Parking sensors
4. Additional Heating / Ventilation
5. Alarm
6. Manual headlamp beam height adjustment
7. Lane departure warning system
8. Blind spot monitoring system
9. Automatic headlamp dipping

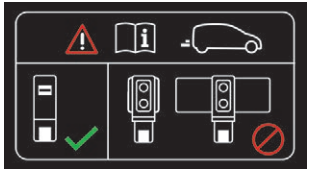
Labels

Side-hinged rear doors section.

Moduwork section.

Rear seat and bench seat on rails section.

Precautions for the seats and bench seats section.



Retractable sliding table section.

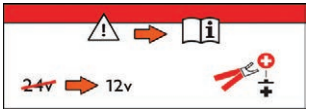
Additional heating/ventilation section.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag section.

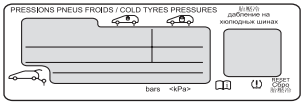
ISOFIX child seats section.

Manual child lock section.

Bonnet section.



12 V battery section.



Temporary puncture repair kit, **Spare wheel** and **Identification markings** sections.

Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. While accelerating, change up early.

With an electronic gearbox, favour automatic mode, without pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

With an automatic gearbox, favour automatic mode, without pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear efficiency indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
With an electronic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.
With an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal and press the accelerator gradually. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions and also help to reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has the steering-mounted "CRUISE" control, make use of cruise control at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Be proficient in the use of electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
Above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof blind and window blinds, etc.).
Unless it has automatic regulation, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if these are not automatically managed.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the visibility conditions do not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter ; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game, etc.) to contribute towards reducing the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.
Disconnect all portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle ; place the heaviest items in the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer, etc.). Preferably, use a roof box.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit the summer tyres.

Comply with servicing instructions

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:
- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Do not forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, cabin filter, etc.) and observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty, your vehicle becomes polluting. Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to bring your vehicle's nitrogen oxides emissions back in line with the regulations.

When filling the tank, do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle to avoid overflow.

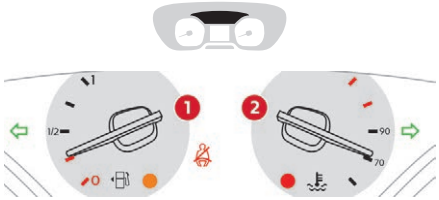
You will only see the fuel consumption of your new vehicle settle down to a consistent average after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres).

Instrument panel

Speedometer

Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).

Indicators with LCD text or matrix instrument panel

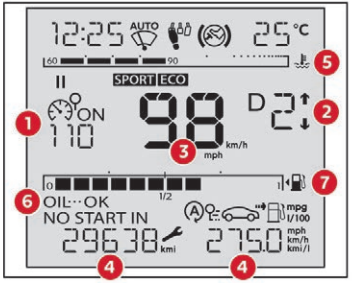


1. Fuel gauge.
2. Engine coolant temperature gauge.

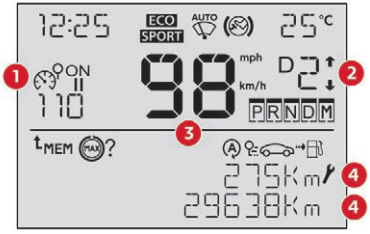
Display screen

When travelling abroad, it may be necessary to change the units of distance: the display of road speed must be in the official units (miles or km) for the country. The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

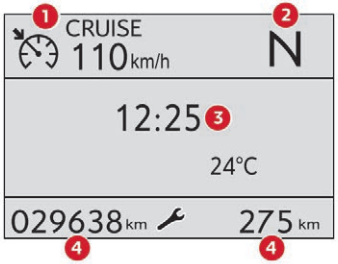
With LCD instrument panel



With LCD text instrument panel



With matrix instrument panel

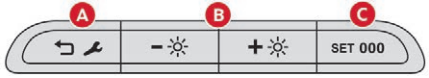


1. Cruise control or speed limiter settings.
2. Gear efficiency indicator.
   Gear with an automatic or electronic gearbox.
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h) with LCD and LCD text instrument panel.
   Display area with matrix instrument panel: alert or function status message, trip computer, digital speedometer (mph or km/h), etc.
4. Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km), trip distance recorder (miles or km).
   Display zone with LCD text instrument panel: alert or function status message, trip computer, etc.
5. Engine coolant temperature gauge.
6. Engine oil level indicator.
7. Fuel gauge.

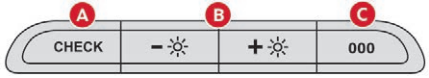
Control buttons

With LCD instrument panel

With LCD text instrument panel



With matrix instrument panel



A. Resetting the service indicator.
Temporary reminder of servicing information or the remaining range with the AdBlue® system.
Depending on version: go back up a level, cancel the current operation.

B. General lighting dimmer.
Depending on version: movements in a menu, a list ; changing a value.

C. Resetting the trip distance recorder.
Depending on version: enter the configuration menu (long press), confirm a choice (short press).

D. Reminder of servicing information or the remaining range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.
Reset the function selected (service indicator or trip recorder).
Depending on version: enter the configuration menu (long press), confirm a choice (short press).

With the touch screen, it is also possible to modify the lighting dimmer.

Rev counter

Rev counter (x 1000 rpm).

Warning and indicator lamps

Displayed as symbols, the warning and indicator lamps inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.
Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.

For more information on a system or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

Persistent warning lamp

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of a red or orange warning lamp indicates a fault that needs further investigation, using any associated message and the description of the warning lamp in the documentation.

Where a warning lamp remains lit

The references **(1)** **(2)** and **(3)** in the warning and indicator lamp description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.

(1): **You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

List of warning and indicator lamps

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions / Observations
Red warning/indicator lamps				
STOP	**STOP**	Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.	Indicates a serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering, automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
	Engine oil pressure	Fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
	Brakes	Fixed.	The brake fluid level has dropped significantly.	Carry out (1), then top up with brake fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions / Observations
+	**Brakes**	Fixed, associated with the ABS warning lamp.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
	Parking brake	Fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released.	
or	**Maximum engine coolant temperature**	Fixed (warning lamp or LED), and needle in the red zone (depending on version).	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Carry out (1), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the coolant, if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).
	Battery charge	Fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).	Clean and retighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).
	Seat belts not fastened/ unfastened	Fixed or flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.	A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened (depending on version).	
	Door open	Fixed, associated with a message identifying the access. An audible signal supplements the alert if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).	A door, the boot, the tailgate or the tailgate screen is still open (depending on version).	Close the access. If your vehicle is equipped with a right-hand hinged door, its opening will **not** be indicated by this warning lamp.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions / Observations
Orange warning/indicator lamps				
ABS	**Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)**	Fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed, then carry out (3).
	Service	Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more minor faults have been detected for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel. You can deal with certain anomalies yourself, for example an open door or the start of saturation of the particle filter. For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).
		Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more major faults have been detected for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the cause of the anomaly using the message displayed in the instrument panel, then carry out (3).
+		Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then fixed.	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	The vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible. Only with BlueHDi Diesel engines.

(1): **You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions / Observations
AdBlue	**AdBlue®** **(Euro 6.1)**	Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 1,500 and 375 miles (2,400 and 600 km).	Top up the AdBlue® as soon as possible, or carry out (3).
AdBlue +		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The driving range is less than 375 miles (600 km).	You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid a breakdown**, or carry out (3).
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue® or carry out (2). It is **essential** to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

(1): **You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions / Observations
AdBlue	**AdBlue®** **(Euro 6.2)**	On for around 30 seconds when starting the vehicle, accompanied by a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).	Top up the AdBlue®.
		Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km).	**As soon as possible**, top up with AdBlue® or carry out (3).
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The driving range is less than 62 miles (100 km).	You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid starting being prevented**, or carry out (3).
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue® or carry out (2). It is **essential** to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions / Observations
AdBlue + +	**SCR emissions control system**	Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the fixed Service and Engine self-diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	Depending on the message displayed, you can continue driving for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the engine starting prevention system is triggered.	Carry out (3) as soon as possible to **avoid starting being prevented**.
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the fixed Service and Engine self-diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	An engine immobiliser prevents the engine from restarting (over the authorised driving limit after confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system).	To start the engine, carry out (2).
	Engine self-diagnosis system	Flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed. Carry out (2) **without fail**.
		Fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. Carry out (3) quickly.
+		Fixed.	A minor engine fault has been detected.	Carry out (3).
+ STOP		Fixed.	A major engine fault has been detected.	Carry out (1) and then (2).

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions / Observations
	Collision Risk Alert / Active Safety Brake	Flashing.	The system is operating.	The vehicle brakes briefly so as to reduce the speed of frontal collision with the vehicle ahead.
		Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.	The system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
	Collision Risk Alert / Active Safety Brake	Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	The system has been deactivated, via the vehicle configuration menu.	
	Dynamic stability control (DSC) and anti-slip regulation (ASR)	Flashing.	The DSC/ASR adjustment is activated if there is a loss of grip or trajectory.	
		Fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
OFF	**Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)**	Fixed.	The system is deactivated.	The DSC/ASR system is reactivated automatically when the vehicle is started, and from around 31 mph (50 km/h). Below 31 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate it manually.

(1): **You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions / Observations
	Under-inflation	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	The pressure in one or more tyres is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.
+		Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.	The system is faulty: tyre pressures are no longer monitored.	Under-inflation detection is no longer assured. As soon as possible, check the pressure of the tyres and carry out (3).
	Diesel engine pre-heating	Temporarily on.	When switching on the ignition, if the weather conditions and the engine temperature make it necessary.	Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting. If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the indicator lamp goes off again, then start the engine.
	Front passenger airbag (ON)	Fixed.	The front passenger airbag is activated. The control is in the "**ON**" position.	**In this case, do NOT install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat - Risk of serious injury!**
	Front passenger airbag(OFF)	Fixed.	The front passenger airbag is deactivated. The control is in the "**OFF**" position.	You can install a "rearward facing" child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on).
	Airbags	Fixed.	One of the airbags or seat belt pretensioners is faulty.	Carry out (3).

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions / Observations
or	**Low fuel level**	Fixed (warning lamp or LED) and needle in the red zone (depending on version), accompanied by an audible signal and a message. The audible signal and the message are repeated with increasing frequency as the level drops towards zero.	When it first comes on, there remains **less than 8 litres** of fuel in the tank.	Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel. **Never drive until completely empty**, as this could damage the emissions control and injection systems.
	Presence of water in Diesel filter	Fixed (with LCD instrument panel).	The Diesel filter contains water.	Risk of damage to the injection system: carry out (2) without delay.
	Particle filter (Diesel)	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the risk of particle filter blockage.	This indicates that the particle filter is beginning to saturate.	As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.
		Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message signalling that the additive level in the particle filter is too low.	This indicates that the level in the additive tank is low.	Carry out (3).
	Power steering	Fixed.	The power steering has a fault.	Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).
	Rear foglamp	Fixed.	The rear foglamp is lit.	

(1): **You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions / Observations
	Foot on the brake	Fixed.	Omission or insufficient pressure on the brake pedal.	With an automatic gearbox, with the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of position **P**. With an electronic gearbox, with the lever in position **N**, to start the engine.
	Foot on the brake	Flashing.	With an electronic gearbox, the clutch will overheat if you hold the vehicle on a slope using the accelerator for too long.	Use the brake pedal and/or the parking brake.
	Foot on the clutch	Fixed.	Stop & Start: the change to START mode is rejected because the clutch pedal is not fully depressed.	Fully depress the clutch pedal.
Green warning/indicator lamps				
AUTO	**Automatic wiping**	Fixed.	Automatic windscreen wiping is activated.	
+ or	**Automatic Headlamp Dipping**	Fixed.	The function has been activated in the touch screen (**Driving** / **Vehicle** menu). The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.	

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions / Observations
	Stop & Start	Fixed.	When the vehicle stops the Stop & Start puts the engine into STOP mode.	
		Indicator flashing temporarily.	STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.	
	Blind spot monitoring	Fixed.	The function has been activated.	
	Lane departure warning system	Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal.	A line is being crossed, right-hand side (or left-hand side).	Turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction to return to the correct trajectory.
	Direction indicators	Flashing with audible signal.	The direction indicators are on.	
	Sidelamps	Fixed.	The lamps are lit.	
	Dipped beam headlamps	Fixed.	The lamps are lit.	
	Front foglamps	Fixed.	The front foglamps are lit.	

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions / Observations
Blue warning/indicator lamps				
	Main beam headlamps	Fixed.	The main beams are on.	
Black/white warning lamps				
	Foot on the brake	Fixed.	Omission or insufficient pressure on the brake pedal.	With an automatic gearbox, with the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of position **P**. With an electronic gearbox, with the lever in position **N**, to start the engine.
	Foot on the brake	Flashing.	With an electronic gearbox, the clutch will overheat if you hold the vehicle on a slope using the accelerator for too long.	Use the brake pedal and/or the parking brake.

Indicators

Service indicator

The service indicator is displayed on the instrument panel. Depending on the vehicle version:

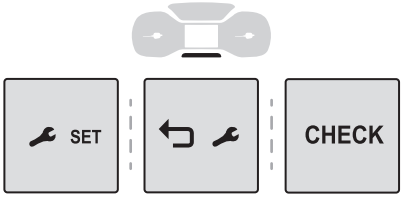
- the distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the sign “-”.
- an alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions / Observations
	Service spanner	Lights up temporarily when the ignition is switched on.	Between 620 and 1,860 miles (1,000 and 3,000 km) remain before the next service is due.	
		Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.	The service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km).	Have your vehicle serviced very soon.
+	**Service spanner flashing**	Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on. (With BlueHDi Diesel engines, associated with the Service warning lamp).	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.

☞ Switch off the ignition.



☞ Press this button and keep it pressed.

☞ Switch on the ignition ; the distance recorder display begins a countdown.

☞ When the display shows **=0**, release the button ; the spanner disappears.

> ℹ If it is necessary to disconnect the battery after this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

Retrieving the service information

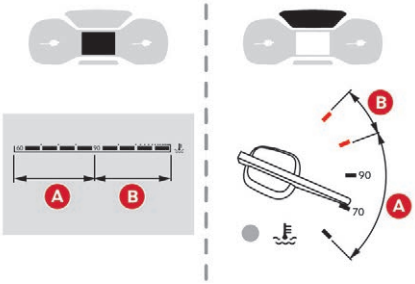
The service information can be accessed at any time.

☞ Press this button.

The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

The distance indicated (in miles or kilometres) is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
The alert may be triggered close to a due date.

Engine coolant temperature



With the engine running, when the needle or bar graph (depending on version) is:

- in zone **A**, the temperature of the engine coolant is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature of the engine coolant is too high ; the maximum temperature and central **STOP** warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message.

You must stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checking

After driving for a few minutes, the temperature and pressure in the cooling system increase.
To top up the level:

- ☞ wait at least one hour for the engine to cool,
- ☞ unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop,
- ☞ when the pressure has dropped, remove the cap,
- ☞ top up the level to the "MAX" mark.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Be aware of the risk of scalding when topping up the coolant. Do not fill above the maximum level (indicated on the reservoir).

Engine oil level indicator

On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, at the same time as the servicing information.

The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been stopped for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct

This is indicated by a message in the instrument panel.

Oil level incorrect

This is indicated by a message in the instrument panel.
If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.

Oil level indicator fault

This is indicated by a message on the instrument panel. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

To locate the dipstick and the oil filler cap for the **Diesel engine**, refer to the corresponding section.

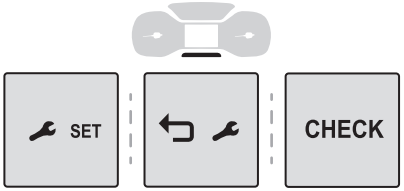
AdBlue® range indicators (BlueHDi)

The Diesel BlueHDi engines are equipped with a system that associates the SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) emissions control system and the Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases. They cannot function without AdBlue®fluid.
When the level of AdBlue® falls below the reserve level (between 1,500 miles and 0 miles (2,400 and 0 km)), a warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on and an estimate of the distance that can be travelled before engine starting is prevented is displayed in the instrument panel.

The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty. It is then no longer possible to start the engine until the minimum level of AdBlue® has been topped up.

Manual display of the range

While the range is greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km), it is not displayed automatically.



☞ Press this button to temporarily display the driving range.

With touch screen

You can access this information via the "**Driving/Vehicle**" menu.

Actions required related to a lack of AdBlue®

The following warning lamps light up when the quantity of AdBlue® is lower than the reserve level corresponding to a range of 1,500 miles (2,400 km).
Together with the warning lamps, messages regularly remind you of the need to top up to avoid engine starting being prevented. Refer to the **Warning and indicator lamps** section for details of the messages displayed.

For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

With BlueHDi (Euro 6.1) engines

Warning/ indicator lamps lit	Action	Remaining range
AdBlue	Top up as soon as possible.	Between 1,500 and 375 miles (2,400 and 600 km)
AdBlue	**A top-up is vital**, there is the risk that the engine will be prevented from starting.	Between 375 and 0 miles (600 and 0 km)
AdBlue	To be able to restart the engine, add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.	0 miles (km)

With BlueHDi (Euro 6.2) engines

Warning/ indicator lamps lit	Action	Remaining range
AdBlue	Top up.	Between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km)
AdBlue	Top up as soon as possible.	Between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km)
AdBlue	**A top-up is vital**, there is the risk that the engine will be prevented from starting.	Between 62 and 0 miles (100 and 0 km)
AdBlue	To be able to restart the engine, add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.	0 miles (km)

Malfunction of the SCR emissions control system

Malfunction detection

AdBlue

If a malfunction is detected, these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of an "Emissions fault" or "NO START IN" message.

The alert is triggered while driving as soon as the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

> If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnostic checks of the SCR emissions control system.

Malfunction confirmed during the permitted driving phase (between 685 and 0 miles (1,100 and 0 km))

If the warning lamp is still on after 31 miles (50 km) of driving, the fault in the SCR system is confirmed.

The AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by the display of a message ("Emissions fault: Starting prevented in X miles" or "NO START IN X miles") indicating the remaining range in miles or kilometres.
While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds. The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.
You can continue driving for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the **engine starting prevention** system is triggered.

! Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Starting prevented

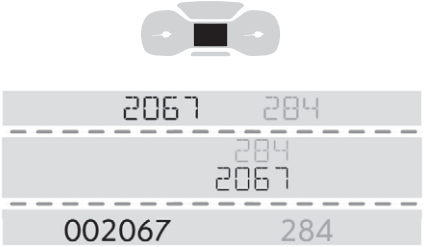
Every time the ignition is switched on, the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented" or "NO START IN" is displayed.

! To be able to restart the engine, call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Distance recorders

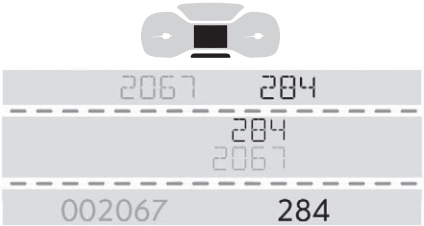
The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

Total distance recorder



It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

Trip distance recorder



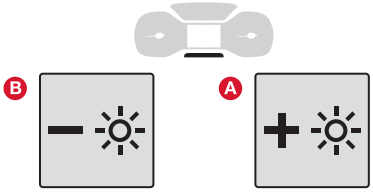
It measures the distance travelled since it was reset by the driver.

☞ With the ignition on, press this button until zeros appear.

Lighting dimmer

This system allows the brightness of the instruments and controls to be adjusted to suit the ambient light level.

With buttons



With the lamps on, press button **A** to increase the brightness of the lighting or button **B** to reduce it.
Release the button when the desired level of brightness is reached.

With touch screen

☞ In the **Settings** menu, select "**Brightness**". Or select "**OPTIONS**", "**Screen configuration**" then "**Brightness**".
☞ Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.

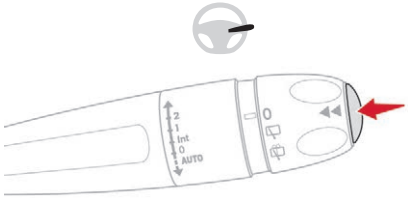
ℹ The brightness can be adjusted differently for day mode and night mode.

Trip computer

Information displayed about the current journey (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

Display of information

To display the various trip computer tabs in succession:

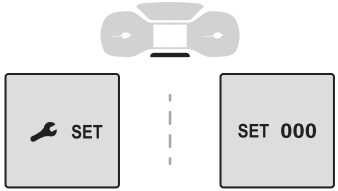


☞ Press this button, located on the end of the **wiper control stalk**.

With steering mounted controls

☞ Press the knob on the **steering wheel**.

On the instrument panel



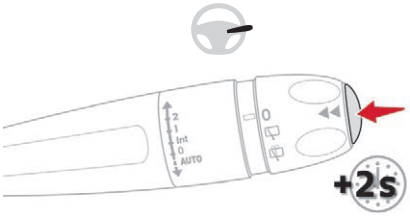
☞ Press this button.

The current information is then displayed:
- the range,
- the current fuel consumption,
- the Stop & Start time counter,
- the trip "**1**" followed (depending on version) by trip "**2**" with: the average speed, the average fuel consumption and the distance travelled for each trip.

Trips "**1**" and "**2**" are independent but their use is identical.
For example, trip "**1**" can be used for daily figures and trip "**2**" for monthly figures.

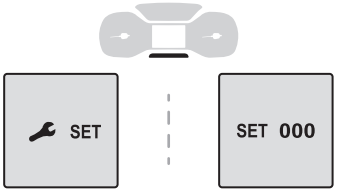
Reset trip

The reset is performed when the trip is displayed.



☞ Press the button located on the end of the **wiper control stalk** for more than 2 seconds.

☞ Press the knob on the **steering wheel** for more than 2 seconds.



☞ Press this button for more than 2 seconds.

A few definitions

Range

(miles or km)

The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (depending on the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the terrain, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.
After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).
If dashes instead of figures continue to be displayed when driving, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated during the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed from 19 mph (30 km/h).

Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated since the last **trip computer** reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

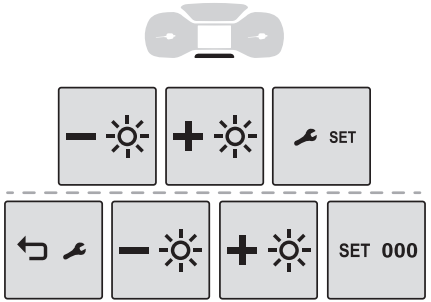
Stop & Start time counter

(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Setting the time and date

Without audio system



The date and time can be adjusted in the instrument panel display.

☞ Hold this button down.

☞ Press one of these buttons to select the setting to be changed.

☞ Press this button briefly to confirm.

☞ Press one of these buttons to change the setting and confirm again to register the change.

With audio system

☞ Press the **MENU** button for access to the **main menu**.

☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to select the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu, then confirm by pressing the OK button.

☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the **Display configuration** menu, then confirm by pressing the OKbutton.

☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" and "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to adjust the date and time values, then confirm by pressing the OK button.

With CITROËN Connect Radio

☞ Select the **Settings** menu in the upper banner of the touch screen.

☞ Select "**System configuration**".

☞ Select "**Date and time**".

☞ Select "**Date**" or "**Time**".
☞ Choose the display formats.
☞ Change the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
☞ Confirm with "**OK**".

With CITROËN Connect Nav

Setting of the time and date is only available if synchronisation with the GPS is deactivated.

☞ Select the **Settings** menu in the bar of the touch screen.

☞ Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

☞ Select "**Set time-date**".

☞ Select the "**Date**" or "**Time**" tab.

☞ Set the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
☞ Confirm with "**OK**".

Additional settings

You can choose:
- To change the time zone.
- To change the display format of the date and time (12h/24h).
- To activate or deactivate the summer time management function (+1 hour).
- To activate or deactivate the synchronisation with the GPS (UTC).

ℹ The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key,

If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle, the central locking does not take place.
However, if the vehicle has an alarm, it will be activated after 45 seconds.

If the vehicle is unlocked and there is no action at the doors or boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the vehicle has an alarm, it will also be reactivated automatically.

The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle without taking the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system with you, even for a short period.
Be aware of the risk of theft when the key is in one of the defined zones with the vehicle unlocked.

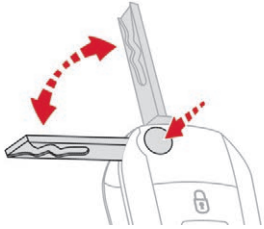
If a door is not properly closed (except the right-hand door with side-hinged rear doors):
- vehicle stationary and engine running, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds,
- vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and an alert message for a few seconds.

Remote control key

This allows the central locking or unlocking of the vehicle using the door lock or remotely.
It also allows the vehicle to be located, the fuel filler cap to be removed and refitted and the engine to be started or switched off, as well as providing protection against theft.

The remote control buttons are not active with the ignition switched on.

Unfolding/Folding the key



☞ Press this button to unfold or fold the key.

If this button is not pressed, there is a risk of damaging the remote control.

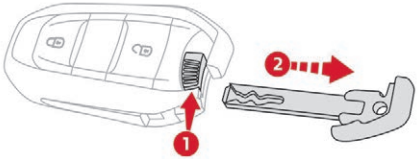
Keyless Entry and Starting

This allows the remote central locking or unlocking of the vehicle.
It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.

Integral key

This is used to lock and unlock the vehicle when the remote control cannot operate:

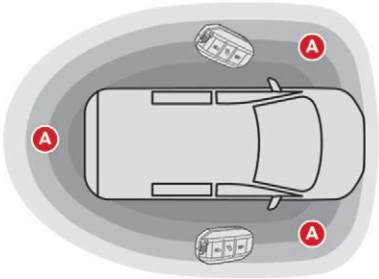
- cell battery flat, vehicle battery discharged or disconnected, etc.
- vehicle located in an area with strong electromagnetic signals.



☞ Keep this button **1** pulled while removing key **2** from the housing.

ℹ If the alarm is activated, the audible signal triggered on opening a door with the key (integral with the remote control) will stop when the ignition is switched on.

"Keyless Entry and Starting" on your person



It allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle, while carrying the remote control on your person in the recognition zone "**A**".

ℹ In the ignition on (accessories) position, with the "START/STOP" button, the hands-free function is deactivated and it is impossible to open the doors.
For more information on **Starting/ switching off the engine, Keyless Entry and Starting** and in particular the "ignition on" position, refer to the corresponding section.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, with the vehicle locked.

☞ Press this button.

The courtesy lamps come on and the direction indicators flash for around 10 seconds.

Remote operation of lighting

If fitted to the vehicle.

A short press on this button switches on the lighting remotely (lighting of sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and number plate lamps).
A second press on the button before the end of the timed period cancels the remote lighting.

Advice

Remote control
The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system ; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.
Do not press the remote control buttons when out of range of the vehicle: risk of making it inoperable. It would then be necessary to reinitialise it.
The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off.

Anti-theft protection
Do not make modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system ; this could cause malfunctions.
For vehicles with a key ignition switch, do not forget to remove the key and turn the steering wheel to engage the steering lock.

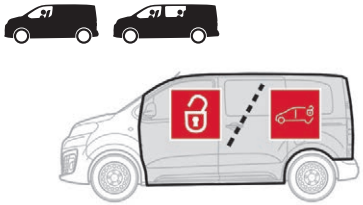
Locking the vehicle
Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.
As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Purchasing a second-hand vehicle
Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the received keys are the only ones which can start the vehicle.

Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt, etc.) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection.
If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, etc.) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

Unlocking/Complete or selective unlocking

What is the purpose of complete or selective unlocking?

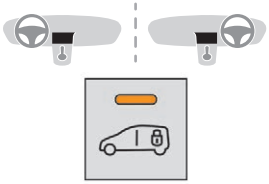


Complete unlocking unlocks **all** the vehicle's doors (front, side and rear).

Selective unlocking unlocks either the **cab** doors, or the doors of the **loading area** (side and rear).

The separation of the **cab** and **loading area** unlocking is a security measure. It is used to prevent access to the part of the vehicle in which the driver is not present.

Activation/Deactivation



☞ To **activate selective** unlocking between **cab** and **loading area** or to **deactivate** this selectivity and return to **complete** unlocking, switch the ignition on and press this button for more than two seconds.

An audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message, confirm that the request has been acknowledged.

By default, selectivity between **cab** and **loading area** is activated.

Unlocking/Complete unlocking

Unlocking is signalled by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds. Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold and the alarm is deactivated.

With the key

☞ To **completely** unlock the vehicle, turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the front of the vehicle.

If fitted to the vehicle, the alarm is not deactivated. Opening a door will trigger the alarm, which can be stopped by switching the ignition on.

With the remote control

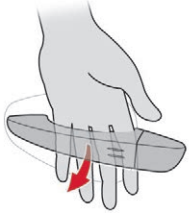
☞ Depending on equipment, press one of these buttons to unlock the vehicle.

Using the remote control with electric sliding side door(s)

☞ To **fully** unlock the vehicle and open the side door, press and hold this button until the door has opened.

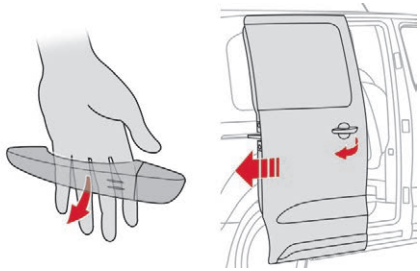
With the Keyless Entry and Starting on your person

To unlock the vehicle, the remote control must be in recognition zone **A**.



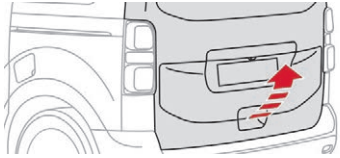
☞ To **completely** unlock the vehicle, pass your hand behind one of the door handles (front door(s), manual sliding side door(s) or left-hand side-hinged door) then pull the handle to open the corresponding door.

With electric sliding side door(s)



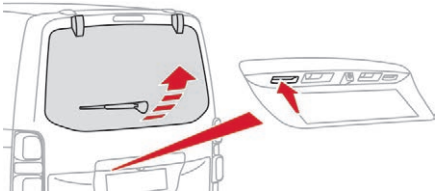
☞ With the Keyless Entry and Starting on your person, run your hand behind the door handle to unlock the vehicle, then pull and release the handle. This action also triggers the opening of the corresponding door.

With tailgate



☞ With the Keyless Entry and Starting on your person, to unlock the **vehicle**, pull the tailgate handle then raise it to open.

With a tailgate opening rear screen



☞ With the Keyless Entry and Starting device on your person, to unlock the vehicle, press the tailgate opening rear screen unlocking control. The screen partly opens ; raise it to open it fully.

Selective unlocking

ℹ Unlocking is signalled by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds. Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold and the alarm is deactivated.

With the remote control

☞ To unlock the **cabin** doors alone, press this button **once**.

☞ To unlock the side and rear doors of the **loading area**, press this button a **second time**.

If the vehicle is fitted with this function:

☞ Press this button to unlock the **loading area** only.

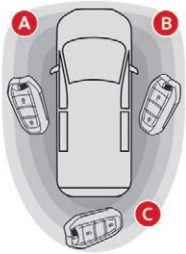
Using the remote control with electric sliding side door(s)

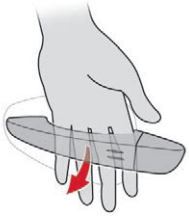
☞ To unlock the **loading area** alone without opening the side door, press the relevant door button or keep the button pressed down to open the door.

With Keyless Entry and Starting on your person

☞ To unlock the **cabin** alone, pass your hand behind a handle of the front left or right doors, then pull the handle to open the door.

ℹ The door locking state of the **loading area** remains unchanged.

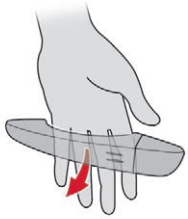


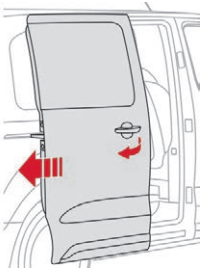


☞ To unlock the loading area alone, the remote control on your person in **recognition zone A**, **B** or **C**, pass your hand behind a handle of the front left or right doors, then pull the handle to open the corresponding door.

ℹ Depending on the version, the door mirrors unfold only when the cabin is unlocked, the alarm is deactivated.

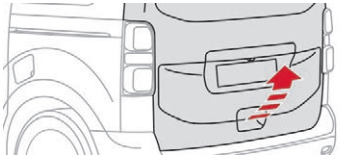
With electric sliding side door(s)





☞ With Keyless Entry and Starting "on your person", pass your hand behind the door handle of a front door to unlock the vehicle, then pull and release the handle. This operation also causes the corresponding door to be opened.

With tailgate



☞ With Keyless Entry and Starting "on your person", pull the tailgate handle and lift it to unlock the **loading area**.

ℹ Unlocking is signalled by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

Locking

With the key

☞ To lock the vehicle **completely**, turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the rear of the vehicle.

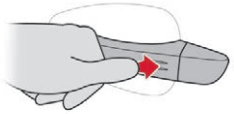
If the vehicle has an alarm, this will not be activated.

With the remote control

☞ To lock the vehicle **completely**, press this button.

With the Keyless Entry and Starting on your person

To lock the vehicle the remote control must be in recognition zone **A**.



☞ To lock the vehicle, press on the markings of one of the door handles (front door(s), manual sliding side door(s) or left-hand side-hinged door).

With electric sliding side door(s)

☞ With the Keyless Entry and Starting on your person, to lock the vehicle **completely**, press on the markings of one of the **front** door handles.

With tailgate

☞ With the Keyless Entry and Starting on your person, to lock the vehicle, press the tailgate locking control.

ℹ +3s If the vehicle is so equipped, pressing and holding the locking controls closes the windows. The window stops immediately once the control is released.

! Ensure that no person or object prevents the correct closing of the windows.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

ℹ If the vehicle is not fitted with an alarm, locking is signalled by the fixed illumination of the direction indicators for about two seconds.
Depending on the version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

! Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.
As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle without taking the remote control with you, even for a short time.

Deadlocking

! Deadlocking deactivates the exterior and interior door controls, as well as the central locking button on the dashboard.
The horn remains operational.
You must therefore never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

With the key

☞ To deadlock the vehicle, turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the rear of the vehicle.
☞ Then **within five seconds**, turn the key towards the rear again.

With the remote control

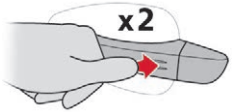
☞ To deadlock the vehicle, press this button.
☞ Then **within five seconds after locking**, press this button again.

ℹ Depending on version, the electric door mirrors fold at the same time.

If the vehicle is not fitted with an alarm, deadlocking is confirmed by fixed illumination of the direction indicators for about two seconds.

With the Keyless Entry and Starting on your person

To lock the vehicle the remote control must be in recognition zone **A**.



- To **completely** lock the vehicle, press on the markings of one of the door handles (front door(s), manual sliding side door(s) or left-hand side-hinged door).
- To deadlock the vehicle, press the marking again **within five seconds.**

With electric sliding side door(s)

- With the Keyless Entry and Starting on your person, to **completely** lock the vehicle press on the markings of one of the **front** door handles.
- To deadlock the vehicle, press the markings again **within five seconds.**

With tailgate

- With the Keyless Entry and Starting on your person, to **completely** lock the vehicle, press the tailgate locking control.
- To deadlock the vehicle, press the control again **within five seconds**.

If the vehicle is not fitted with an alarm, deadlocking is confirmed by fixed illumination of the direction indicators for about two seconds.

Back-up procedures

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Visit a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, a personal identification document and, if possible, the label bearing the key code.
The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Total unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

Use these procedures in the following cases:
- remote control cell battery flat,
- remote control fault,
- vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

In the first case, you can also replace the remote control cell battery.
In the second case, you can also reinitialise the remote control.
Refer to the corresponding sections.

- Insert the key in the door lock.
- Turn the key towards the front/rear to lock/unlock the vehicle.

☞ To deadlock it, turn the key towards the rear again within 5 seconds of locking (confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators).

ℹ If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, this function will not be activated when locking with the key.
If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds on opening the door ; switch on the ignition to stop it.

ℹ If unlocking using the key in the lock takes place after **locking using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting**, **all of the accesses** are unlocked.
If unlocking using the key in the lock takes place after **locking using the key**, only the doors are unlocked (front doors, sliding side doors(s)). The hinged doors and the tailgate are not unlocked. Switching on the ignition unlocks them.

Central locking not functioning

Use these procedures in the following cases:
- central locking fault,
- battery disconnected or discharged.

! In the event of a malfunction with the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to lock the boot and thus ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

Driver's door

☞ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock it, or towards the front to unlock it.

Front passenger door and sliding side door

Unlocking

☞ Pull the interior door opening handle.

Locking

☞ Open the door.
☞ For the side door, check that the child lock is not on. Refer to the corresponding section.

Front passenger door

Sliding side door

☞ Remove the black cap on the edge of the door, using the key.
☞ Insert the key in the aperture without forcing it, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
☞ Remove the key and refit the black cap.
☞ Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

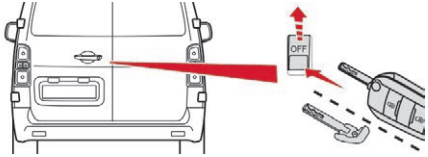
Side-hinged doors

Unlocking

☞ Use the interior opening handle.

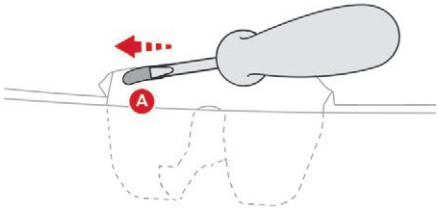
Locking

☞ If the vehicle is so equipped, check that the electric child lock is not on.
☞ Open the left-hand side-hinged door.



- Insert the key into the latch aperture on the edge of the door (without forcing), then slide the assembly upward.
- Remove the key.
- Close the door and check from the outside that it has locked correctly.

Unlocking the tailgate



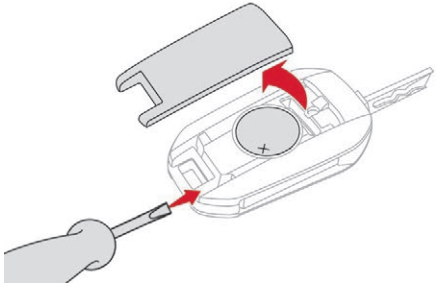
- From inside the vehicle, insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- Move the latch to the left.

If the fault persists after closing again, the tailgate will remain locked.

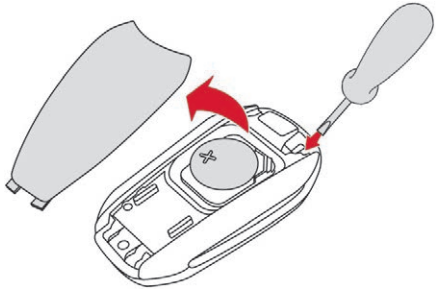
Changing the battery

If the battery is discharged, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Without Keyless Entry and Starting
Battery ref.: CR1620/3 Volts.



With Keyless Entry and Starting
Battery ref.: CR2032/3 Volts.



- Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot and raise the cover.
- Remove the discharged battery from its housing.
- Insert the new battery, observing the polarity, and clip the cover onto the housing.
- Reinitialise the remote control.

For more information on **Reinitialising the remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

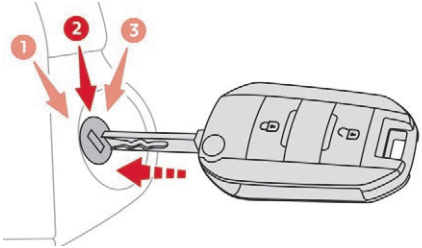
Do not throw remote control batteries away as they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a remote control fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.

If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

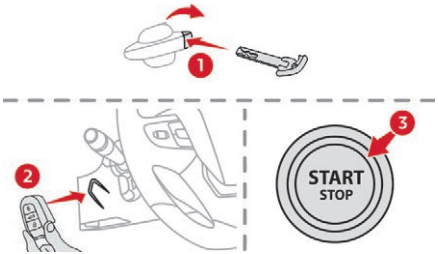
Without Keyless Entry and Starting



- Switch off the ignition.
- Return the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
- Immediately press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
- Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch.

The remote control is now fully operational again.

With Keyless Entry and Starting



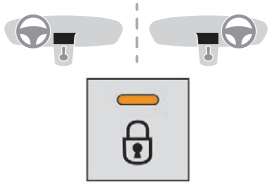
- Insert the mechanical key (integral with the remote control) in the lock to open the vehicle.
- Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.
- Switch on the ignition by pressing the "**START/STOP**" button.

!
- **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- **With an automatic gearbox,** from mode **P**, fully depress the brake pedal.
- **With an electronic gearbox,** from mode **N**, fully depress the brake pedal.

If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Central locking / unlocking

Manual



- Press this button to operate the central locking of the vehicle (doors, tailgate or side-hinged doors) from inside the vehicle. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.
- Pressing the button again unlocks the vehicle completely. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

i The indicator lamp also goes off when unlocking one or more doors.

! The central locking does not take place if one of the doors is open.

When locking/deadlocking from the outside
When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the indicator lamp flashes and the button is inoperative.
- ☞ After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
- ☞ After deadlocking, it is necessary to use the remote control, Keyless Entry and Starting or the integral key to unlock the vehicle.

Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

When carrying large objects with the tailgate or side-hinged doors open, press the button to lock just the cab doors.

When carrying large objects with the tailgate or side-hinged doors open, press the button to lock just the front and rear doors (sliding side door).

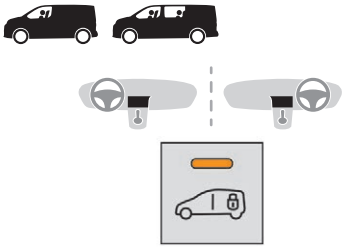
When locking from inside, the door mirrors do not fold.

If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not function. This is signalled by a mechanical noise from the locks.
If the tailgate or the side-hinged doors are open, only the other doors are locked. The indicator lamp in the button remains off.

Automatic (anti-intrusion security)

The doors and the tailgate or the side-hinged doors can lock automatically while driving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)).
To deactivate/reactivate this function (activated by default):
- ☞ Press the button until an audible signal is heard and/or a message appears in the screen.

Locking / unlocking the loading area



This button is unavailable if the vehicle has been locked or deadlocked from outside (using the key, remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting, depending on equipment) or if one of the doors is still open.

Automatic

The **loading area** is always locked when driving.

To deactivate the automatic locking function, go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual

- With complete unlocking activated, press this button to lock (indicator lamp comes on)/ unlock (indicator lamp goes off) the **vehicle**.
- With selective unlocking activated, press this button to lock (indicator lamp comes on)/ unlock (indicator lamp goes off) the **loading area**.

Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

The indicator lamp goes off when unlocking one or more doors of the **loading area**.
With the ignition off and the vehicle fully locked, the indicator lamp goes off for energy economy reasons.

Electric sliding side door(s)

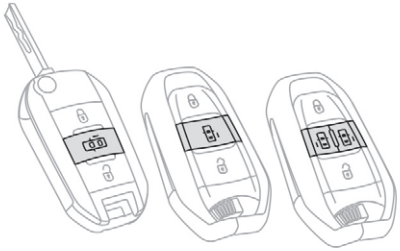
The exterior and interior door handles and the interior buttons allow the electrically powered movement of the door to be started.
Opening and closing of the doors is accompanied by an audible signal.

Opening

With the exterior or interior handle

- With the door unlocked, pull and release the handle to start the opening of the door. Pull the handle again to reverse its movement.

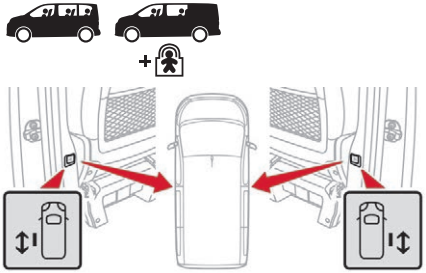
With the remote control



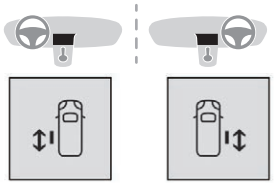
- With the door unlocked, press and hold this button until the respective sliding side door has opened.
- Press this button again to reverse the movement of the door.

The remote control buttons are not active with the ignition switched on.

Using the button(s) on the door pillar



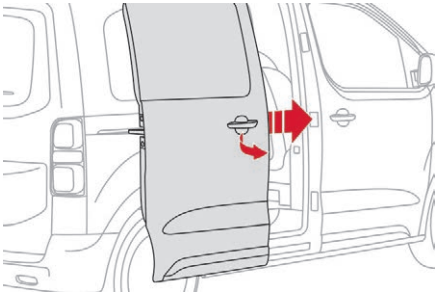
Using the button(s) at the front



- With complete unlocking activated and the child lock deactivated, to unlock the vehicle and start the opening of a door, press the button for the corresponding door.
- With selective unlocking activated, to unlock just the **loading area** and start the opening of a door, press the button for the corresponding door.
- In both cases, pressing the button again reverses the movement of the door.

Closing

With the exterior handle



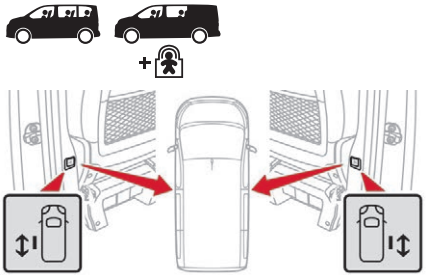
- Pull and release the handle to start the closing of the door. Pull again to reverse the movement.

With the remote control

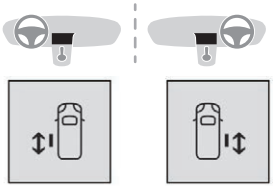
- Press and hold this button until the respective sliding door has closed. Press it again to reverse the movement.

> The remote control buttons are not active with the ignition switched on.

With the button(s) on the door pillar



With the button(s) at the front



- To start the closing of a door, press the button for the corresponding door. Pressing it again reverses the movement.

The button is not operational and pressing it results in an audible signal, if the speed of the vehicle is above 20 mph (30 km/h).

The button(s) at the front or on the door pillar is not operational and pressing it results in an audible signal, if:
- the vehicle is moving,
- the child lock is on (activated) (for the buttons on the door pillars),
- the vehicle has been locked or deadlocked from outside (using the key, remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting, depending on equipment).

The button for the left-hand door is not operational and pressing it results in an audible signal if the fuel filler flap is open.

General recommendations for the sliding side doors

The doors must only be operated when the vehicle is stationary.
For your safety and for that of your passengers, as well as for correct operation of the doors, you are strongly advised not to drive with a door open.
Always check that it is safe to operate the door and in particular, be sure not to leave children or animals near the door controls without supervision.
The audible warning, the illumination of the "door open" warning lamp and the message on the screen are there to remind you. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have this warning deactivated.
Lock the vehicle when using an automatic car wash.

Before opening or closing or performing any movement of the doors, ensure that no person, animal or object is in the window frame or could block the desired movement, inside or outside the vehicle.
If this advice is not followed, injuries or damage may occur if a part of the body or an object is trapped or caught.
The doors cannot be opened electrically above 2 mph (3 km/h):
- However, if the doors remained open when starting, the speed must fall below 19 mph (30 km/h) before they can be closed.
- Any attempt to open a door electrically using the interior handle while driving results in it only being possible to open the door manually.
- In this case, the audible warning will be given, accompanied by the illumination of the "door open" warning lamp and the message on the screen. To release the door and be able to operate it again, it is necessary to stop the vehicle.

! Take care not to block the guide space on the floor to allow the door to slide correctly.
As a safety measure and for functional reasons, do not drive with the sliding side door open.

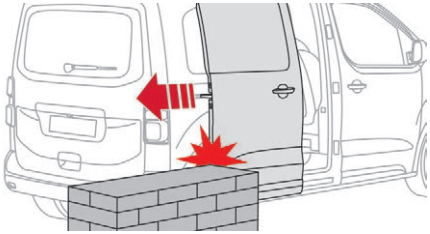
i The electric controls are inhibited in the event of an impact. Manual opening and closing remain possible.

i While starting the engine, the movement of a door is interrupted and continues once the engine is running.

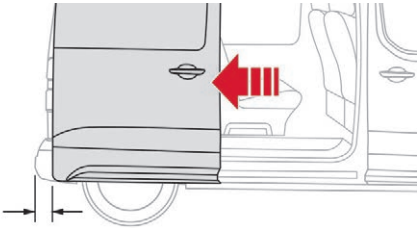
i Depending on the engine, if the door is closed and an attempt is made to open it in Stop mode of Stop & Start, the door opens partially and stops. In Start mode, when the engine restarts, the door continues its movement.

i To hold the sliding side door in the open position, open the door fully to engage the locking device (located at the bottom of the door).

Doors and their obstruction

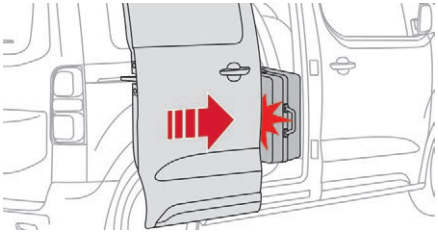


When open, a door projects beyond the body. Be sure to take this into account when parking alongside a wall, a post or a high kerb, etc.



i When open, a door never projects beyond the rear bumper.

Safety/Obstacle detection with electric door(s)



The obstacle detection system is triggered when the moving door encounters an obstacle with a certain level of physical resistance. If an obstacle is detected:

- while the door is closing, the door stops then opens fully.
- while the door is opening, the door stops then closes.
- twice in succession during a movement of the door, the door will no longer close electrically (uninitialisation).

On a steep slope: a safety system slows down the movement of the door.
In all cases, wait a few seconds before operating the door (closing or opening).
Close the door manually for safety reasons. Then reinitialise the door.

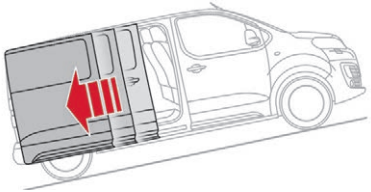
Reinitialising electric doors

If electrical operations no longer work:

- ☞ Fully close the door(s) **manually**.
- ☞ Fully open the door(s) **electrically**.
- ☞ Close the door(s) **electrically**.

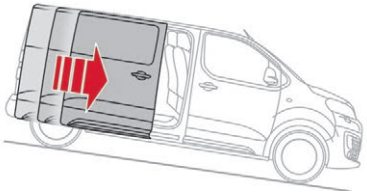
On completion of this procedure, electric operation of the doors is restored.
However, if a problem persists following this procedure, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

On a steep slope



It is possible to open and close the doors electrically on slopes of up to a 20% gradient.
If the vehicle is on a slope, with the front of the vehicle facing up the slope, open the door with care. The door may open more quickly due to the incline.

On a steep slope, guide the side door manually to help it to close.

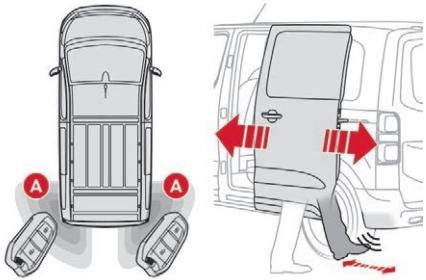


If your vehicle is on a slope, with the front of the vehicle facing down the slope, the door may not stay open and may close **violently** with the risk of injury.

! In the case of a steep slope, the door may be driven by its own weight and as a consequence may open or close **violently**.
There would not be time for action at the electric controls to take effect.
There would not be time for the obstacle detection system to react.
Take care not to leave the vehicle on a steep slope with the door(s) open without supervision. If this advice is not followed, injuries or damage may occur if a person or an object is trapped or caught.

Hands-free sliding side door(s)

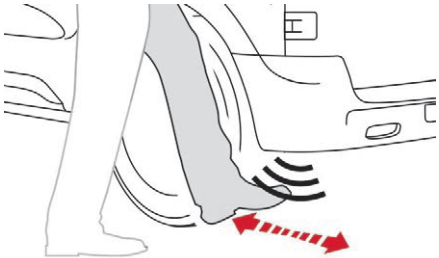
Opening/Closing



With a movement of your foot while keeping the remote control on your person in the recognition zone **A**, the system unlocks and opens the sliding side door or closes and locks it.
The remote control must be located at the rear of the vehicle, at least about 30 cm but no more than about 2 m from the vehicle.

i The automatic locking after closing the door can be programmed in the vehicle configuration menu.

! Before making the movement with your foot, ensure that you are steady and well positioned, so that you do not lose your balance (rain, snow, ice, mud, etc.).
Take care not to touch the exhaust tailpipe when making the movement with your foot - risk of burns.



☞ Put your foot beneath the corner of the rear bumper, then move the foot at normal speed with a sweeping side movement.

The sensor detects the foot approaching and leaving and triggers the opening or closing of the side door.

i Make the movement without interruption and do not repeat it immediately afterwards or several times.
If the door does not open, wait about 2 seconds before trying again.
Do not keep the foot in the air.

i Confirmation that the door is going to open or close is signalled by the direction indicators flashing for a few seconds, accompanied by an audible signal.
The movement of the door is reversed if the movement of the foot takes place during the manoeuvre.
If the vehicle is so equipped, the electric door mirrors fold/unfold on locking/unlocking the vehicle.

Automatic locking

The vehicle locks itself following the hands-free closing of the sliding door.

i If your vehicle is not fitted with an alarm, locking is confirmed by fixed illumination of the direction indicators for about two seconds.
Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

Activation/Deactivation

With audio system or touch screen

By default, hands-free access is activated.

The "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function or automatic vehicle locking when the sliding door is closed is activated and deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

Operating fault

An audible signal repeated three times indicates a fault with the system.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

If the "**Hands-free access self-locking**" option is selected in the vehicle menu and after closing the door, make sure that the vehicle is locked.
This is because locking will not take place:
- if the ignition is on,
- if one of the doors or the tailgate is open,
- if a "Keyless Entry and Starting" remote control is inside the vehicle.

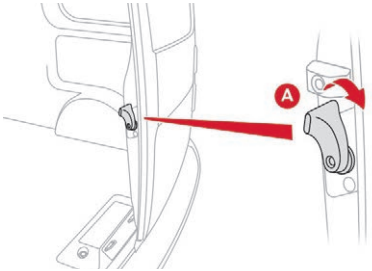
If a number of actions with your foot have no effect, wait a few seconds before starting again.
The system is automatically deactivated in heavy rain or with accumulations of snow.
If it does not work, make sure that the remote control is not exposed to a source of electromagnetic interference (smartphone, etc.).
Operation may be affected if using a prosthetic leg.
This system may not work correctly if the vehicle is fitted with a towing device.

The side door may open or close erratically if:
- the vehicle is fitted with a towball,
- a trailer is being hitched or unhitched,
- a bicycle carrier is being attached or detached,
- bicycles are being loaded or unloaded on a bicycle carrier,
- something is being placed or lifted behind the vehicle,
- an animal approaches the bumper,
- the vehicle is being washed,
- your vehicle is being serviced,
- a wheel is being changed.

To avoid unwanted operation, keep the key away from the detection zone (also from the boot's interior sides) or deactivate the function in the vehicle configuration menu.

Ensure that no person or object could prevent the correct opening or closing of the doors.
Be aware of children when operating the doors.

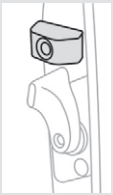
Side-hinged rear doors



☞ After first opening the left-hand door, pull the lever **A** towards you to open the right-hand door.

Closing

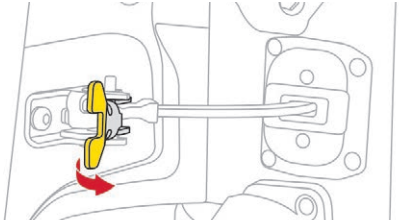
☞ First close the right-hand door, then the left-hand door.



If the left-hand door is closed first, a buffer stop located on the edge of the right-hand door prevents it closing.

If the left-hand side-hinged door is not fully closed, the "**door open**" warning lamp comes on (the right-hand door is not detected). For more information on the **list of warning and indicator lamps** and in particular the door open warning, refer to the corresponding section.

Opening to approximately 180°



If fitted to the vehicle, a check strap system allows the doors to be opened from about 90° to about 180°.

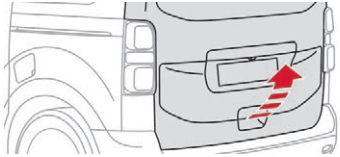
☞ Pull the yellow control when the door is open.

The check strap will engage again automatically on closing.

When parked with the rear doors open to 90°, the doors conceal the rear lamps. To signal the vehicle's position to other road users driving in the same direction who may not have seen the stopped vehicle, use a warning triangle or other device required by the legislation in your country.

Tailgate

Opening



☞ After unlocking the vehicle, pull the handle, then raise the tailgate.

Closing

☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior grab handle, then lock it.

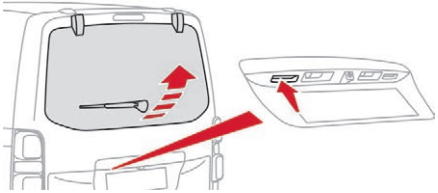
If the tailgate is not properly closed, the "**door open**" warning lamp comes on. For more information on the **list of warning and indicator lamps**, and in particular the door open warning, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of a fault or difficulties felt in manoeuvring the tailgate when opening or closing it, have it quickly checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to stop this issue getting worse and so as to not cause the tailgate to drop, and serious injuries.

Tailgate rear screen

The opening rear screen allows you to access the rear of the vehicle directly, without having to open the tailgate.

Opening



After unlocking the vehicle, press this control and lift the rear screen to open it.

Closing

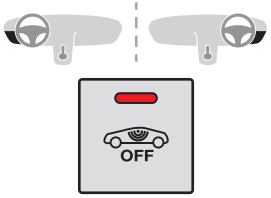
Close the rear screen by pressing the centre of the glass until it is fully closed.

If the tailgate rear screen is not properly closed, the "**door open**" warning lamp comes on. For more information on the **list of warning and indicator lamps** and in particular the door open warning, refer to the corresponding section.

The tailgate and rear screen cannot both be open at the same time, to avoid damaging them.

Alarm

(Depending on version)



System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins.

Exterior perimeter monitoring

The system checks for opening of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries, for example, to open a door, the boot or the bonnet.

Interior volumetric monitoring

The system only checks for the variation in volume inside the **cab**. The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window or enters the vehicle's **cab** but will not be triggered if someone enters the **loading area**.

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

Self-protection function

The system checks for the putting out of service of its components.
The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring is put out of service or damaged.

! For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i If your vehicle is fitted with Additional Heating / Ventilation, volumetric monitoring is not compatible with this system.
For more information on **Additional Heating / Ventilation**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

☞ Turn the ignition off and exit the vehicle.

☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

When the monitoring system is active, the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

The exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric monitoring after 45 seconds.

! If an opening (door, tailgate or hinged doors, bonnet, etc.) is incorrectly closed, the vehicle is not locked, but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds, at the same time as the interior volumetric monitoring.

Deactivation

☞ Press the remote control unlocking button.

or

☞ Unlock the vehicle with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

i If the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or the boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is automatically reactivated.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.
The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered ten times in succession.
When the vehicle is unlocked, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button indicates that the alarm was triggered during your absence.
When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:
- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transport by ship.

Deactivating the interior volumetric monitoring

☞ Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds press the alarm button until the indicator lamp is on fixed.
☞ Get out of the vehicle.
☞ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Only the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated ; the red indicator lamp in the button flashes every second.
To take effect, this deactivation must be carried out after each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric monitoring

☞ Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.
☞ Reactivate the alarm system normally.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

☞ unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,
☞ Open the door ; this sets off the alarm.
☞ Upon switching on the ignition the alarm stops. The button indicator lamp goes off.

Operating fault

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a fault with the system.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic activation

(Depending on country of sale)

The system is activated automatically 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed.
☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the “Keyless Entry and Starting” system.

Electric windows

1. Left-hand electric window control.
2. Right-hand electric window control.

Manual mode

Press or pull the control, without going past the point of resistance. The window stops as soon as the control is released.

Automatic mode

Press or pull the control fully, beyond the point of resistance. The window opens or closes completely when the control is released.
Pressing the control again stops the movement of the window.
The electrical functions of the electric windows are deactivated:
- approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off,
- after one of the front doors is opened, if the ignition is off.

Safety anti-pinch

If your vehicle is fitted with the safety anti-pinch function, when the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers.
In the event of unwanted opening of the window on closing, press the control until the window opens completely. Within 4 seconds, pull the control until the window closes.
The safety anti-pinch does not operate while doing this.

Reinitialising the electric windows

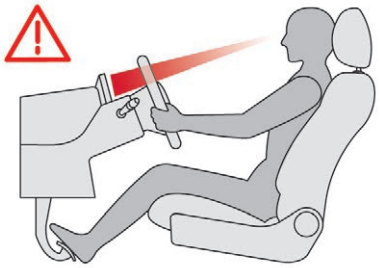
Following reconnection of the battery, or if the windows move abnormally, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialised.
The safety anti-pinch function is not active during these operations.
For each of the windows:
☞ Lower the window fully, then raise it ; it will rise in steps of a few centimetres each time the control is pressed. Repeat the operation until the window is fully closed.
☞ Continue to pull the switch for at least one second after reaching the window closed position.

! If an electric window meets an obstacle during operation, the movement of the window must be reversed. To do this, press the switch concerned.
When the driver operates the passenger electric window switch, it is important to ensure that nothing can prevent the window from closing properly.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

Correct driving position

Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout of the instruments and controls, carry out these adjustments in the following order:

- the height of the head restraint,
- the seat backrest angle,
- the seat cushion height,
- the longitudinal position of the seat,
- the height and reach of the steering wheel,
- the rear view mirror and door mirrors.

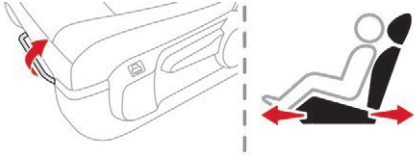


! Once these adjustments have been made, check the instrument panel can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

Manually-adjusted front seats

i For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

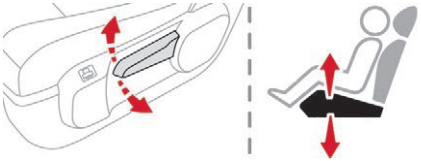
Longitudinal



☞ Raise the control bar and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

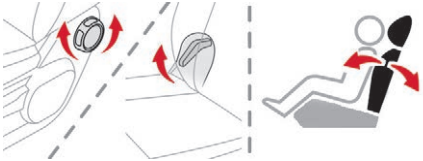
! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Height



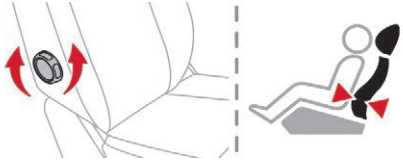
☞ Pull the control upwards to raise the seat or push it downwards to lower it until the desired position is obtained.

Backrest angle



☞ Depending on equipment, turn the knob or pull the control fully up and tilt the backrest forward or backward to adjust it.

Lumbar



☞ Turn the knob manually to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.

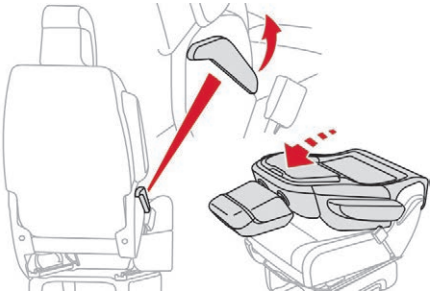
Table position for the driver's and/or the front passenger seat backrest

On the front passenger side, this position allows long objects to be carried.
On the driver's side, this position allows rear passengers to be helped out of the vehicle (by the emergency services).

! Check that there is no object that could interfere with the movement of a seat, both above and below.

☞ Place the head restraint in the low position, and if fitted to your vehicle, raise the armrest and fold the table on the back of the seat.

i Deactivation of the passenger front airbag is recommended.



☞ Pull the control fully up and tip the backrest forward.

To return to the normal position, pull the control up to release the backrest, then pull the backrest up to its raised position.

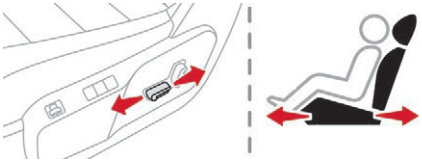
! When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the folded backrest may be thrown around the vehicle.

Electric front seat

i To avoid discharging the battery, carry out these adjustments with the engine running.

i For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

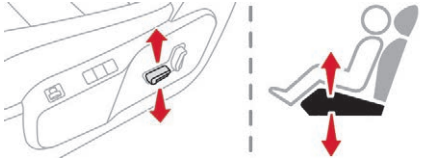
Longitudinal



☞ Push the control forwards or rearwards to slide the seat.

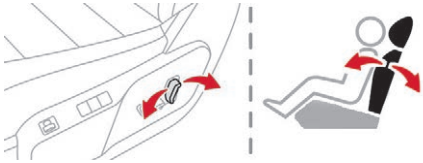
! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Seat cushion height



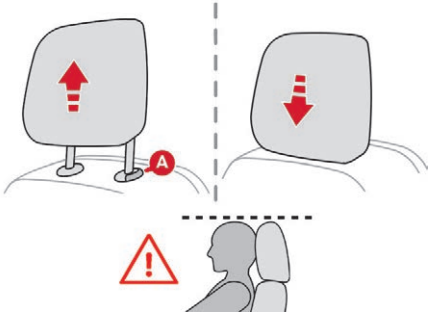
☞ Tilt the control upwards or downwards to obtain the desired height.

Backrest angle



☞ Tilt the control forwards or rearwards to adjust the angle of the backrest.

Head restraint height adjustment



If fitted to your vehicle.

☞ To raise it, pull it upwards as far as possible (notch).

☞ To remove it, press the lug **A** and pull it upwards.

☞ To put it back in place, engage the head restraint rods in the openings keeping them in line with the seat backrest.

☞ To lower it, press the lug **A** and push down on the head restraint at the same time.

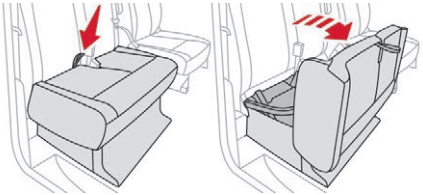
! The head restraint has a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering ; this is a safety device in case of impact. **The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.** Never drive with the head restraints removed ; they must be fitted and correctly adjusted.

2-seat front bench seat

If fitted in the vehicle, this is fixed and has a seat belt built into the backrest for the seat next to the driver's seat.

i For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

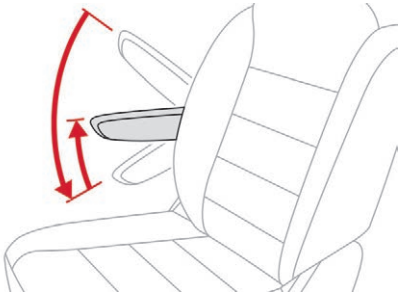
Under-seat storage



If the vehicle is so equipped, a storage space is provided under the seat.

☞ Pull the strap towards you to tip the seat cushion.

Armrest



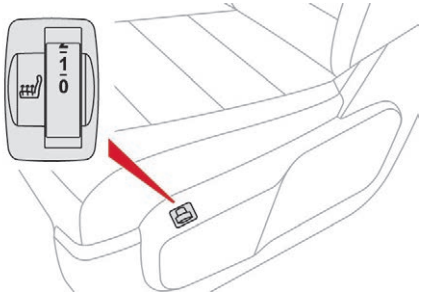
The armrest has notches.

☞ Pull the armrest fully up

☞ Lower it fully down.

☞ Raise the armrest to the desired position.

Heated seat and bench seat



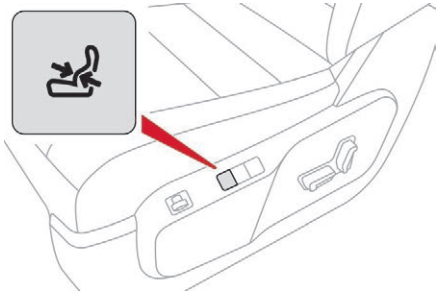
If fitted to the vehicle.

☞ With the engine running, use the adjustment wheel to switch on and select the desired level of heating from **0** (off) to **3** (high).

! Prolonged use of the heated seats is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.
There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, etc.).
To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:
- do not place sharp or heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat,
- never use the heating function if the seat is wet.

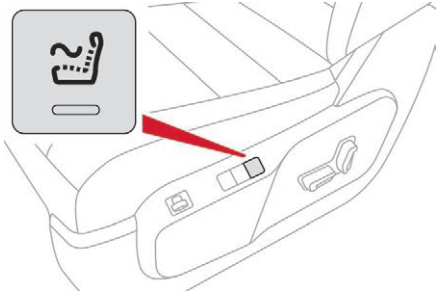
Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.
Reduce the intensity of the heating as soon as possible.
When the seat and passenger compartment have reached an adequate temperature, stop the function ; reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.

Electric lumbar adjustment



☞ Press the control to obtain the desired lumbar support.

Massage function



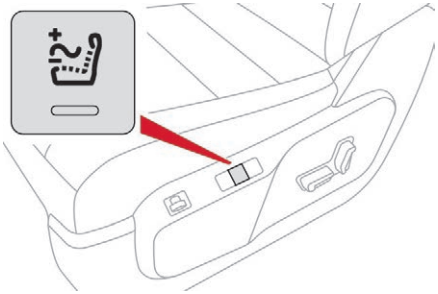
This function provides lumbar massage to the persons in front ; it only operates when the engine is running as well as in the STOP mode of the Stop & Start system.

Activation/Deactivation

☞ Press this button to activate/ deactivate the function.

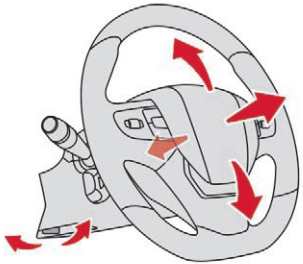
Upon activation, the indicator lamp comes on. The massage function is activated for a period of one hour.
During this time, massage is performed in 6 cycles of 10 minutes (6 minutes of massage followed by a 4-minute break).
After one hour, the function is deactivated ; the indicator lamp goes off.

Adjustment of intensity



Press this button to adjust the intensity of the massage.
Two levels of massage are available.

Steering wheel adjustment



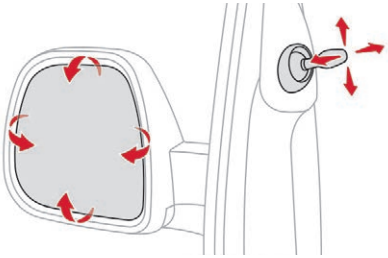
☞ **When stationary**, lower the control lever to release the steering wheel.
☞ Adjust the height and reach.
☞ Pull the control lever to lock the steering wheel.

! As a safety precaution, these operations must only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

Mirrors

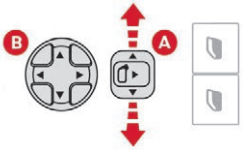
Door mirrors

Manual adjustment



Move the lever in any of the four directions to adjust it.
When the vehicle is parked, the door mirrors can be folded in manually.
If the mirror unit has come out of its initial position, with the vehicle stationary, push it back into place manually or use the control.
There is no risk of breakage, even in frosty weather.

Electric adjustment



- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control **B** in any of the four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.

> **!** As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots.
> The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.
> Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Manual folding

You can manually fold the mirrors (parking obstruction, narrow garage, etc.)

- ☞ Turn the mirror towards the vehicle.

Electric folding

If your vehicle is fitted with this function, the mirrors can be folded electrically from the inside, with the vehicle parked and the ignition on:

- ☞ Place control **A** in the centre position.
- ☞ Pull control **A** back.

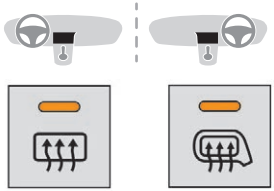
From the outside, lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.

Electric unfolding

The electric unfolding of the mirrors is via the remote control or the key when unlocking the vehicle. Unless folding was selected with control **A**, pull the control back again to the central position.

> **i** The folding / unfolding on locking / unlocking can be deactivated. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
> If necessary, it is possible to fold the mirrors manually.

Heated mirrors



☞ Press this button.

ℹ For more information on **Rear screen demisting - defrosting**, refer to the corresponding section.

Rear view mirror

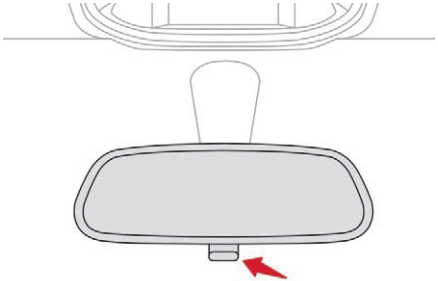
Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles, etc.

Manual model

Adjustment

☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

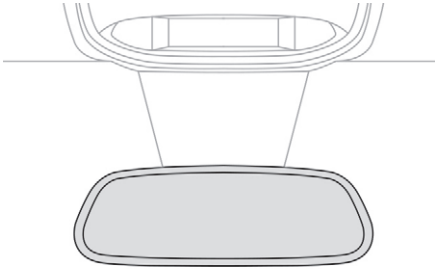
Day/night position



☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.

☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model

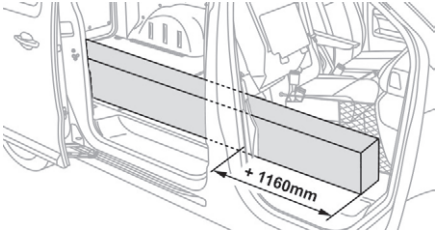


This system automatically and progressively changes between day and night use by means of a sensor measuring the light coming from the rear of the vehicle.

ℹ In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Moduwork

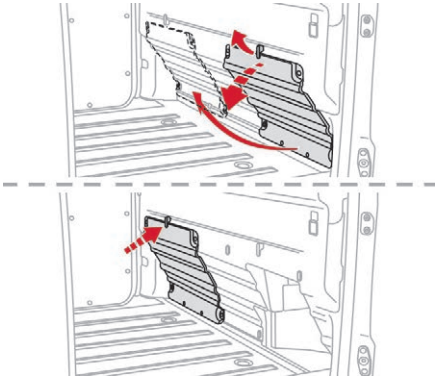
The outer seat cushion of the bench seat can be folded onto the backrest to create a loading area inside the cab.
A removable flap on the partition can be removed to allow long objects to be loaded.



ℹ When the flap is removed, it is possible to load long objects underneath the outer seat.

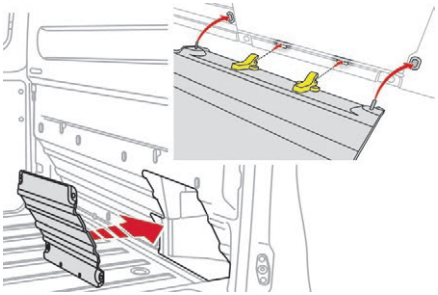
Removable flap (type 1)

Removing the flap



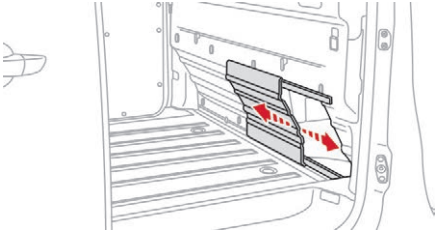
- While holding the flap with one hand, turn the control at the top of the flap with the other hand to release it.
- Lower the flap to remove it from its housing.
- Stow it behind the driver's seat, clipping it into the attachment lugs.
- Turn the control at the top of the flap to lock it.

Putting the flap back on



- Offer up the tilted flap, yellow hinges pointing downwards.
- Put the hinges in their housings then press down fully (to avoid vibrations).
- With one hand, lift the flap to close it again, then with the other hand, turn the control at the top of the flap to lock it.

Removable flap (type 2)

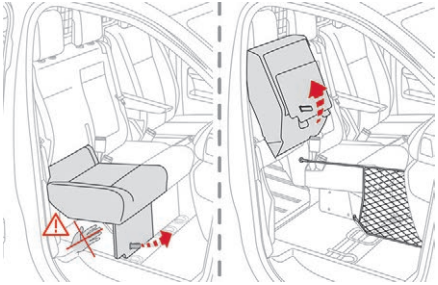


- To open or close the flap, slide it to the left or right.

The flap is kept in the closed or open position with magnets located at each end position.

Folding seat cushion

Raising the seat cushion

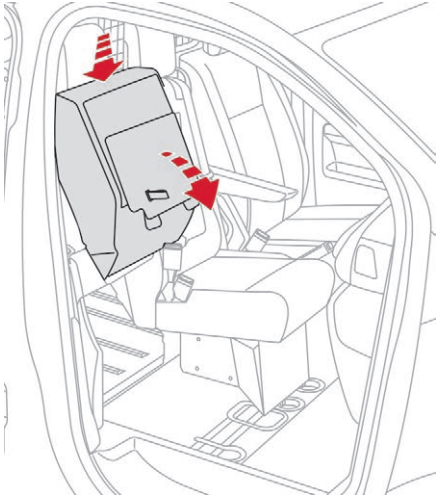


- With one hand, pull the strap firmly forward to unlock the seat cushion.
- A ram lifts the seat cushion against the backrest.

Never put your hand underneath the seat cushion to guide it upwards, as you could get your fingers trapped. Only the strap must be used.

When the side seat is up and the flap is removed, you must install the anti-slip net.
Refer to the **Anti-slip net** section.

Lowering the seat cushion



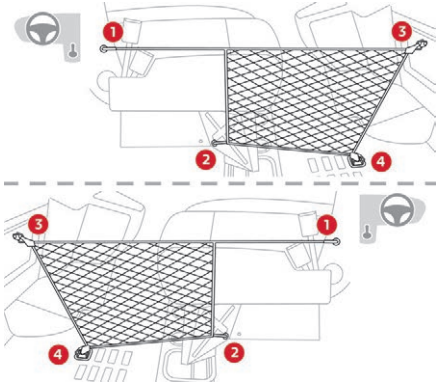
☞ Remove the anti-slip net.

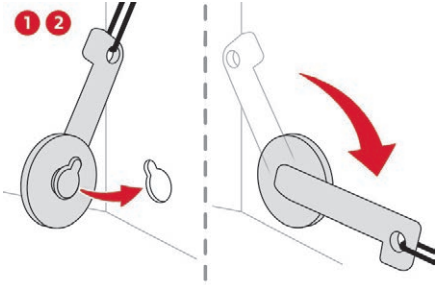
☞ To put the seat cushion back in place, press firmly on the top of the seat with one hand to lower the seat cushion until it locks into the seat position.

! Ensure that no object or passenger feet could obstruct the anchorage points or prevent the correct latching of the assembly.

Anti-slip net

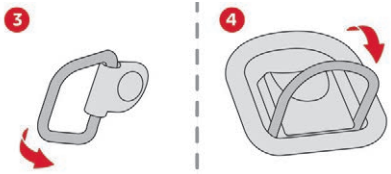
Installing the net





☞ Put the first fastener into the upper cut-out **1**, located beneath the folded seat cushion. Keep the fastener pressed against the structure, then turn it a quarter turn (in a clockwise direction) to lock it.

☞ Put the second fastener into the lower cut-out **2**, located on the seat base. Keep the fastener pressed against the structure, then turn it a quarter turn (in a clockwise direction) to lock it.



☞ Secure the first hook to the ring **3** located in the glove box.

☞ Secure the second hook to the ring **4** located on the floor.

Removing the net

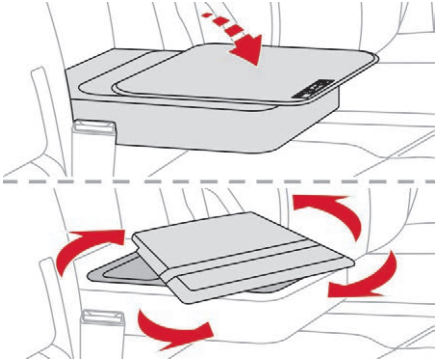
☞ Release the hooks from the rings **4** and **3**.
☞ Remove the lower fastener **2** then the upper fastener **1**, turning them by a quarter turn backwards to unlock them.

! Make sure that the size, shape and volume of the loads carried are compatible with the highway code and safety regulations and do not impair the driver's field of vision.
All loads must be appropriately secured to prevent or minimise displacement and prevent injury.
Install the anti-slip net (supplied with the vehicle) every time that the seat is raised and the partition flap removed.
Never use the net for any other purposes.
Regularly check the condition of the anti-slip net. As soon as signs of wear or tear appear, contact a CITROËN dealer to have it replaced by an anti-slip net that meets the specifications required by CITROËN for the vehicle.
Always fit the removable flap back into place when you are not carrying any long loads.

"Swivelling writing table"

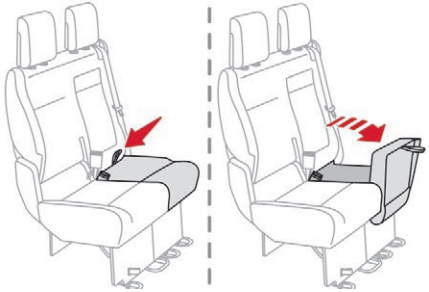
If the vehicle is so equipped, the central seat cushion of the bench seat can be tilted to form a swivelling working table top, thus creating a mobile desk (with the vehicle stationary).

☞ Pull the handle located at the top of the backrest cushion.



!
Never use the table while the vehicle is moving.
Any object on the table will become a dangerous projectile that could cause injury in the event of sudden braking or collision.

Central seat cushion storage



Precautions for the seats and bench seats

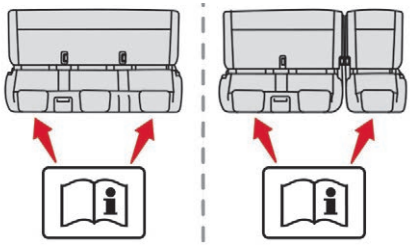
Do not remove a head restraint without storing it and securing it to a support.
Ensure that the passengers can always access the seat belts and fasten them easily.
A passenger must not take their seat without adjusting the seat's head restraint correctly and adjusting and fastening their seat belt.

! Ensure that no object or passenger feet could obstruct the anchorage points or prevent the correct latching of the assembly.

If removing and storing seats and bench seats out of the vehicle, ensure that they are placed in a clean area, so as to avoid introducing any foreign bodies into the mechanisms.

The seats and bench seats are not designed for any other use than in the vehicle. They are equipped with mechanisms and features that may be damaged if used improperly or if dropped.

Loading luggage or objects behind the row 3 seat and bench seat



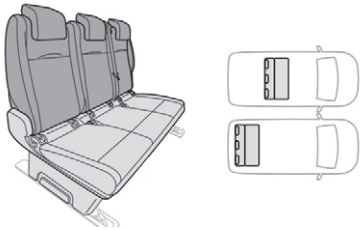
If you want to load luggage onto the backrests in row 3 while in the table position, the backrests in row 2 must also be in the table position.

When driving, it is prohibited to have a passenger:

- in rows 2 and 3, in the outer right-hand seat, if the bench seat is in the fully folded position,
- in the centre seat if the outer right-hand seat is in the fully folded position,
- in row 3 if the backrest in front (row 2) is in the table position,
- in row 3 if the seat/bench seat in front (row 2) is in the fully folded position.

Fixed one-piece bench seat

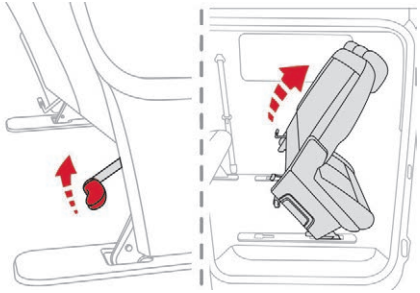
The different levels of equipment and settings described hereafter vary according to the version and the configuration of the vehicle.



The bench seat has a one-piece backrest that may be fixed or folding (table position).

For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

Access to row 3

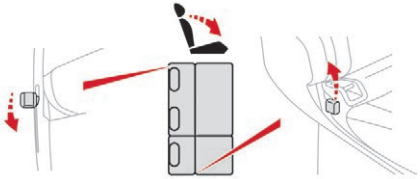


- Using the handle, release the rear feet then tip the seat forward.
- To return the seat, tip the bench towards the rear until the feet lock into place..

> i It is not necessary to fold the backrest (table position) to tip the bench seat for access to row 3.

Folding the backrest to the table position

- Put the head restraints in the low position.

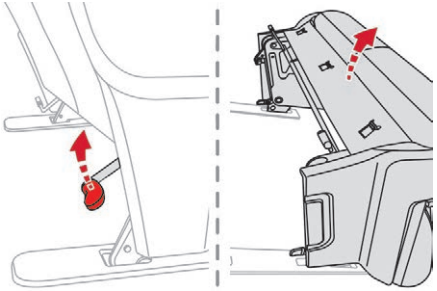


- From the rear, lower the handle to release the backrest.
- From the front, raise the handle to release the backrest.
- Fold the backrest onto the cushion.
- To return the backrest to its normal position, raise the handle and pull the backrest up.

> ! Do not leave objects (such as a bag or toys) on the cushion when folding the backrest.

Tilting

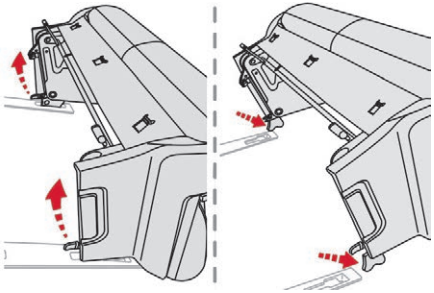
- If your vehicle has the facility, place the backrest in the table position.



- Using the handle, release the rear feet then tip the seat forward.
- To return the seat, tip the bench towards the rear until the feet lock into place..

Removing

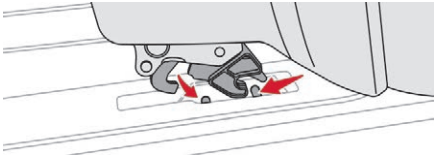
- If the vehicle is so equipped, place the backrest in the table position.
- Tip the bench seat.



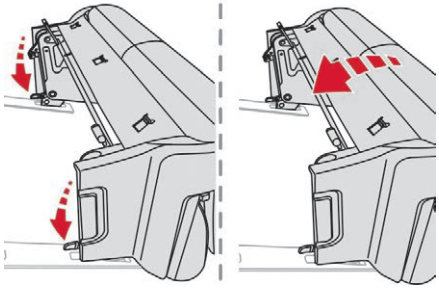
- Release the front feet using the handles.
- Disengage the bench seat from its anchorages.
- Remove the bench seat.

Refitting

- Check that there is no object obstructing the anchorages and preventing the feet locking into place.

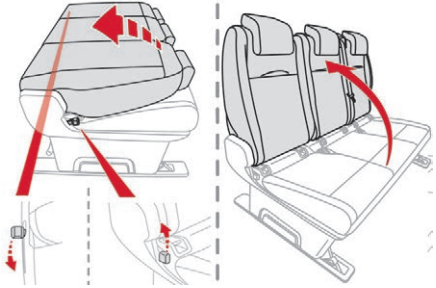


☞ Engage the front feet in the anchorages on the floor (as shown above).



☞ Lock the front feet using the handles.
☞ Tip the bench seat backwards until the rear feet lock into place.

! Be careful of passengers' feet when tipping.

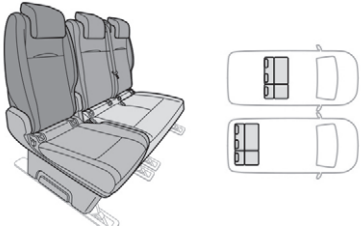


☞ If the vehicle is so equipped, pull the control and raise the backrest (from the rear, lower the handle).

i Check that the seat has correctly locked on the floor when returned to the seating position.

Fixed rear seat and bench seat

The different levels of equipment and settings described hereafter vary according to the version and the configuration of the vehicle.

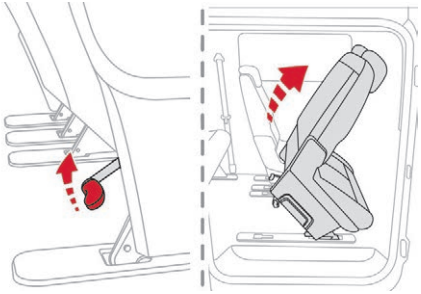


The seat has a backrest that may be fixed or folding (table position).
The bench seat has a one-piece backrest that may be fixed or folding (table position).

i For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

Access to row 3

(example for an individual seat)

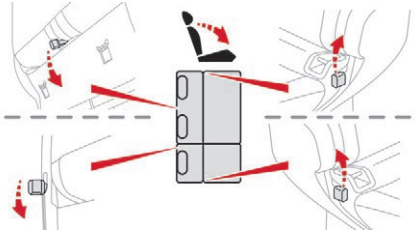


☞ Using the handle, release the rear feet then tip the seat forward.
☞ To return the seat to the normal position, tip the seat backwards until the rear feet engage in their anchorages.

i It is not necessary to fold the backrest (table position) to tip the bench seat and so access row 3.

Folding the backrest to the table position

☞ Put the head restraints in the low position.



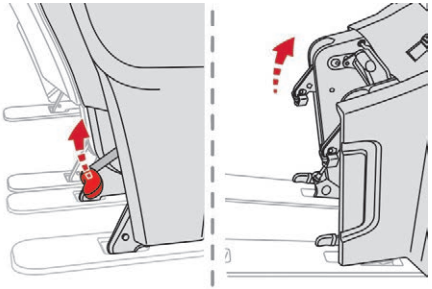
☞ From the rear, lower the handle to release the backrest.
☞ From the front, raise the handle to release the backrest.
☞ Fold the backrest onto the cushion.
☞ To return the backrest to the normal position, raise the handle and pull the backrest up (from the rear, lower the handle).

! Do not leave objects (such as a bag or toys) on the cushion when folding the backrest.

Tilting

(example of an individual seat)

☞ If your vehicle has the facility, place the backrest in the table position.

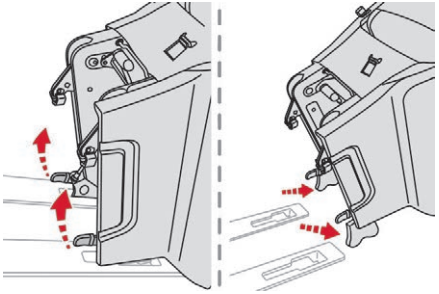


☞ Using the handle, release the rear feet then tip the seat forward.
☞ To return the seat to the normal position, unfold the seat backwards until the rear feet engage in their anchorages.

Removing

(example of an individual seat)

☞ Tip the seat.



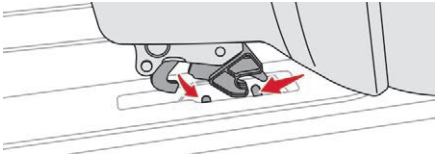
☞ Release the front feet using the handles.

☞ Disengage the seat from its anchorages.
☞ Remove the seat through the side door for row 2 or from the rear for row 3.

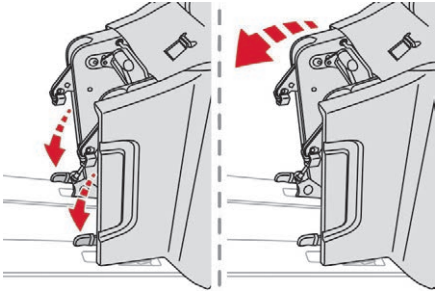
Refitting

(example of an individual seat)

☞ Check that there is no object obstructing the anchorages and preventing the feet locking into place.



☞ Engage the front feet in the anchorages on the floor (as shown above).

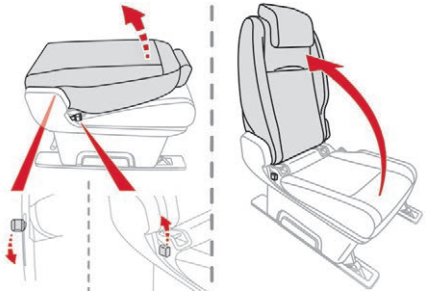


☞ Lock the front feet using the handles.

3

☞ Tip the seat backwards until the rear feet lock into place.

Be careful of passengers' feet when tipping.



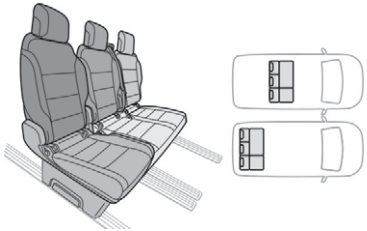
☞ If the vehicle is so equipped, pull the control and raise the backrest (from the rear, lower the handle).

ℹ Check that the seat is correctly locked on the floor when returned to the seating position.

Rear seat and bench seat on rails

Feel, **Shine**, **Business Lounge**

The different levels of equipment and settings described hereafter vary according to the version and the configuration of the vehicle.

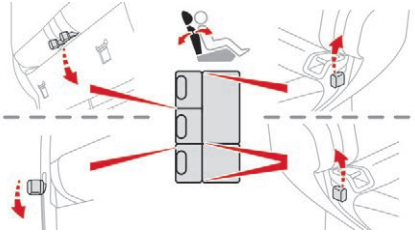


The individual seat is always on the right-hand side and the bench seat on the left-hand side (facing forward).
The bench seat has two independent backrests.

ℹ For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

Adjusting the angle of the backrest

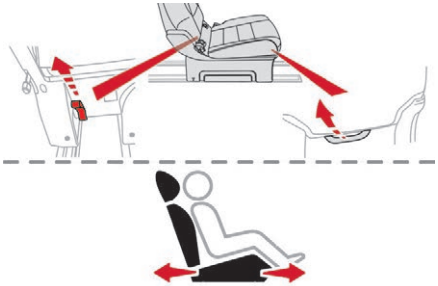
The reclining backrest can be adjusted to several positions.



☞ To recline the backrest, pull the control upwards (from the rear, lower the handle).
☞ Release the control when the desired position is reached.

Moving forward or backward

(example for an individual seat)



Two controls are provided for moving the seat forward and backward:

- From the rear, pull the strap without going beyond the point of resistance and push the seat forward or pull it backward.
- From the front, raise the control and slide the seat forward or backward.

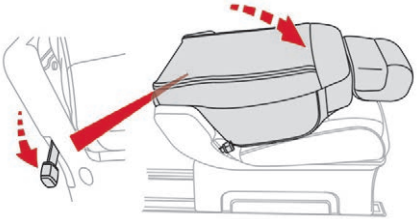
Moving the seat along the full length of the rail

- Place the seat backrest in the table position.
- Slide the seat by pulling on the front control or rear strap.

Folding the backrest to the table position

(example for an individual seat)

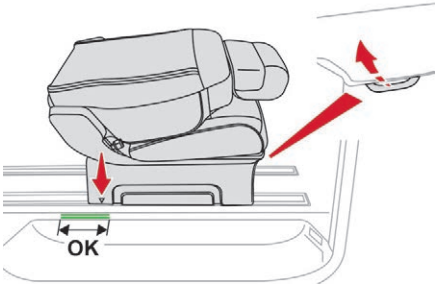
- Put the head restraints in the low position.



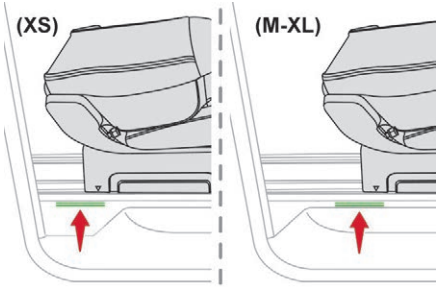
- From the rear, lower the handle to release the backrest.
- From the front, raise the handle to release the backrest.
- Fold the backrest onto the cushion.

! Do not leave objects (such as a bag or toys) on the cushion when folding the backrest.

Returning the backrest to the normal position (between the markings)



To return the backrest to the normal position, the seat must be positioned between the markings.
The arrow must not be outside the markings.



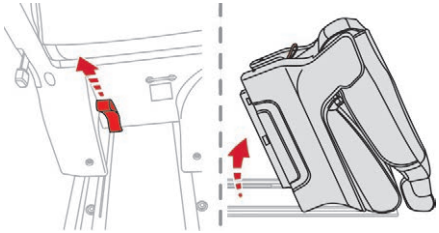
☞ Use the front control to move the seat so that it is between the markings.

Removing

(example of an individual seat)

☞ Move the seat forward for access to the strap.

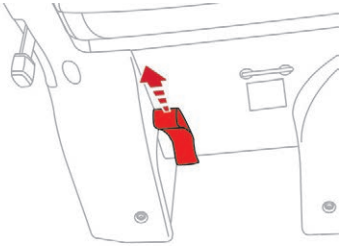
☞ Fold the backrest to the table position



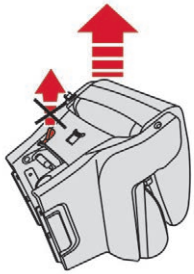
☞ From the rear, pull the strap fully to release the anchorages and tip the seat forwards to place it in the vertical position.

☞ Remove the seat through the side door for row 2 or through the rear for row 3.

Refitting



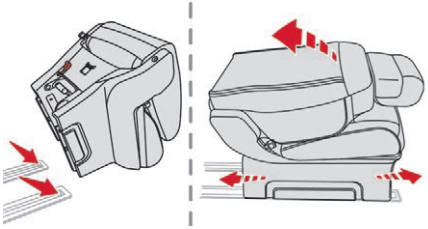
ℹ Before refitting the seat or bench seat in the vehicle, pull the strap fully to ensure that the latching mechanism has engaged.



! Do not use the strap to lift the seat or bench seat.

(example of an individual seat)

☞ Check that nothing is obstructing the rails.



☞ Place the front part of the guides on the rails.

☞ Tip the seat to align the rear of the guides in the rails.

☞ Slide the seat forwards or backwards until it engages in the notches.

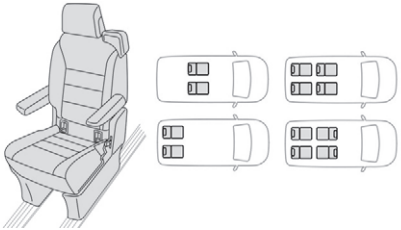
☞ Raise the backrest.

ℹ Check that the seat has correctly locked on the floor when returned to the seating position.

Individual rear seat(s) on rails

Shine, **Business Lounge**

The different levels of equipment and settings described hereafter vary according to the version and the configuration of the vehicle.



The individual seat is fitted with a three-point inertia reel seat belt.
It can be placed facing **forward** or **rearward** facing.

> If there is a rearward facing individual seat in row 2, ensure that the seat in row 1 (driver or passenger) is not too far back, in order to avoid contact between the two seats.
> This could cause significant wear of the parts in contact.

> For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

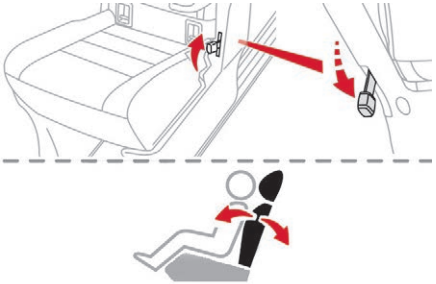
Armrest(s)

The armrest has notches.

- Pull the armrest fully up.
- Lower it fully.
- Raise the armrest to the desired notched position.

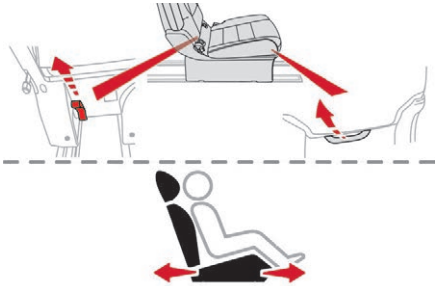
Adjusting the angle of the backrest

The backrest can be adjusted to several positions.



- To recline the backrest, pull the control upwards (from the rear, lower the handle).
- Release the control when the desired position is reached.

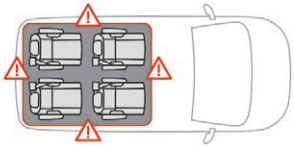
Moving forward or backward



Two controls are provided for moving the seat forward and backward:

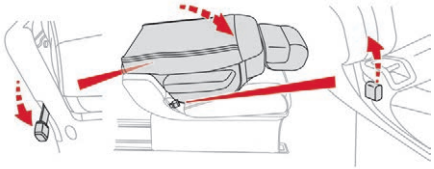
- From the rear, pull the strap without going beyond the point of resistance and push the seat forward or pull it backward.
- From the front, raise the control and slide the seat forward or backward.

Folding the backrest to the table position



! Ensure that nothing (examples: bag, case, toy, folding and sliding table) is interfering with the operation to fold the backrest.

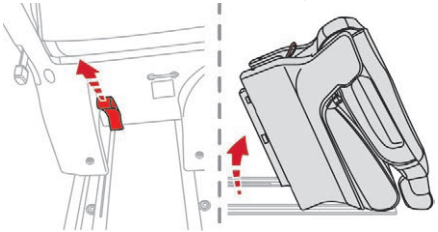
☞ Put the head restraints in the low position.



☞ From the rear, lower the handle to release the backrest.
☞ From the front, raise the handle to release the backrest.
☞ Fold the backrest onto the cushion.

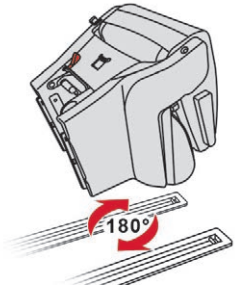
Removing

☞ Move the seat forwards for access to the strap.
☞ Fold the backrest to the table position.



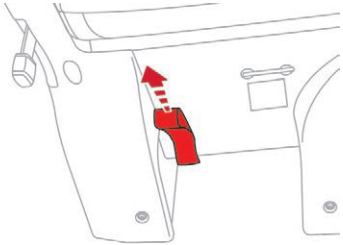
☞ From the rear, pull the strap beyond the point of resistance to release the anchorages and tip the seat forwards to place it in the vertical position.
☞ Remove the seat through the side door for row 2 or through the rear for row 3.

Changing the direction of the seat

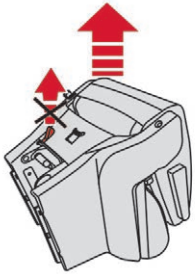


When the seat is removed, your can rotate it by 180°.

Refitting

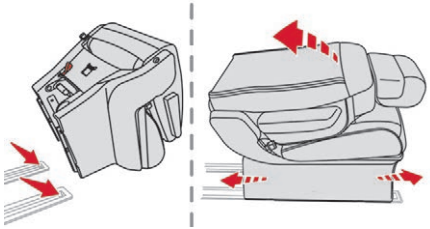


i Before refitting the seat in the vehicle, pull the strap fully to ensure that the latching mechanism has engaged.



! Do not use the strap to lift the seat.

☞ Check that nothing is obstructing the rails.



☞ Fit the front part on the rails.
☞ Tip the seat to align the rear of the guides in the rails.
☞ Slide the seat forwards or backwards until it engages in the notches.
☞ Raise the backrest.

ℹ Check that the seat has correctly locked on the floor when returned to the seating position.

Crew cab, fixed

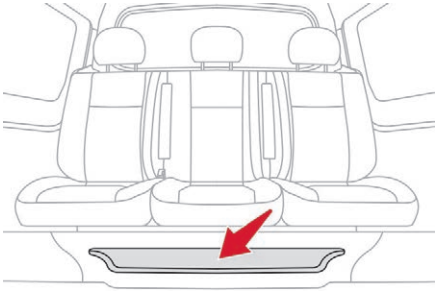
It comprises a fixed bench seat, seat belts, storage compartments (depending on equipment) and side windows.
It is separated from the **loading area** by a high-strength partition offering comfort and safety.

Rear bench seat

This ergonomic bench seat has three seats. The two outer seats are fitted with ISOFIX mountings.

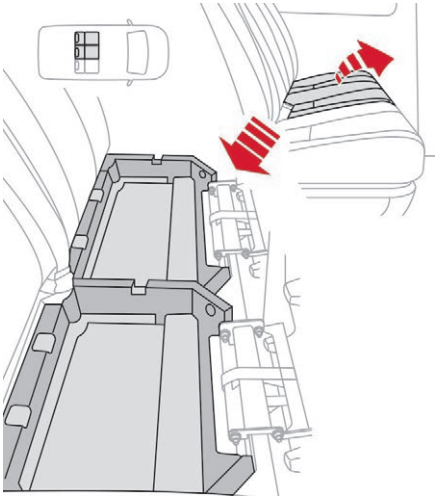
ℹ For more information on the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Storage compartment

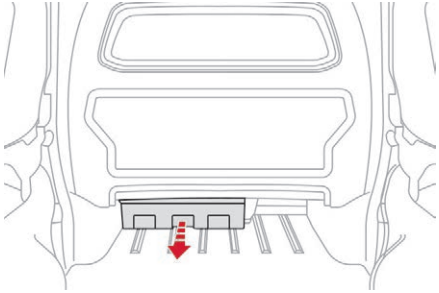


If applicable, a storage compartment is available at the front, underneath the bench seat.

Under seat cushion storage wells



If the vehicle is so equipped, they are located underneath the centre and outer left-hand seats.
To gain access to it from the cab, tip the required seat forwards.



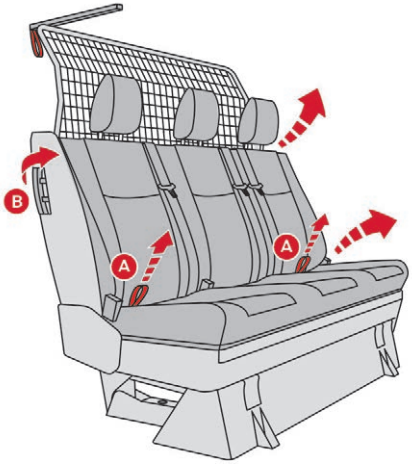
Depending on the country of sale, the wells can be dismantled and removed through the rear so that bulky objects can be stowed underneath the bench seat.

Do not attach anything to the cab fixing structure.
Do not exceed the number of passengers indicated on the registration certificate.
In the rear, the **loading area** is intended for carrying goods only.
You are advised to place the goods or heavy objects as far forwards as possible in the **loading area** (towards the cab) and secure them by means of straps using the stowing rings on the floor.
The rear seat belt frames are not designed to secure the load being carried.

Crew cab, folding

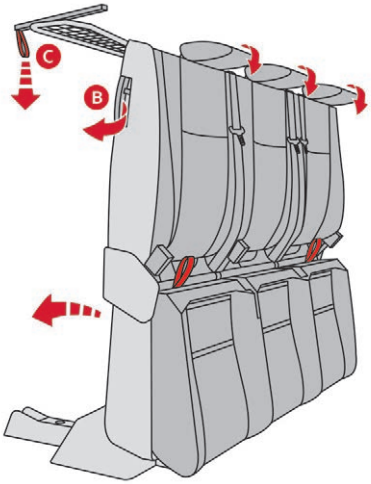
It comprises a folding bench seat, seat belts and side windows.
It is separated from the **loading area** by a bench seat with a high-strength partition offering comfort and safety.

Folded position



- Using one hand only, pull up one of the straps **A** to fold the bench seat.
- Using the handle **B**, guide the movement of the bench seat until it locks in the folded position.

Bench seat position



- To put the bench seat back in place, pull the strap **C** to unlock the bench seat, then release the strap.
- Then, using only the handle **B**, guide the descent of the backrest to tip the assembly until it locks in the bench seat position.

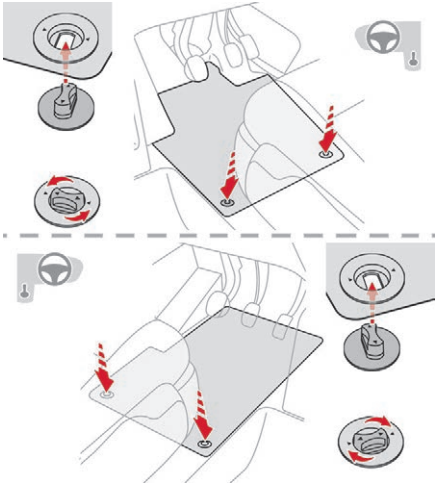
! Never put your hand underneath the bench seat to guide it downwards, as you could get your fingers trapped.
Ensure there are no objects or feet beneath the bench seat or obstructing the anchorage system, preventing the assembly from being correctly locked.

! Do not attach anything to the cab fixing structure.
Do not exceed the number of passengers indicated on the registration certificate.
In the rear, the load space is intended for carrying goods only.
It is recommended to place goods or heavy objects as far forwards as possible in the load space (towards the cab) and secure them by means of straps using the stowing rings on the floor.
The rear seat belt frames are not designed to secure the load being carried.

Interior fittings

Mats

Fitting



When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side, use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.

Removing/refitting

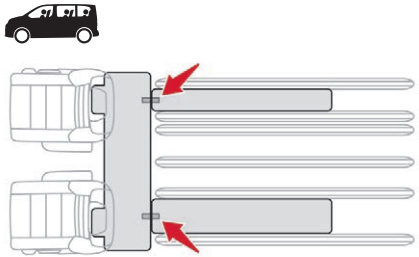
☞ To remove it on the driver's side, move the seat fully back and turn the fixings by a quarter turn.

☞ To refit it, position the mat and refit the fixings by turning them by a quarter turn.

! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle ; these fixings must be used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.
The mats approved by CITROËN have two fixings located below the seat.

In rows 2 and 3



Use the Velcro to connect the transverse mats in row 2 with the longitudinal mats in rows 2 and 3.

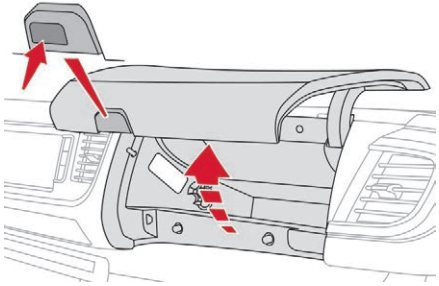
Glove box

It houses the front passenger airbag deactivation switch and can hold a bottle of water, the vehicle's handbook pack, etc.

! Never drive with the glove box (if equipped) open when a passenger is sitting at the front. It may cause injury during sharp deceleration.

Storage compartment

This can hold a bottle of water, the vehicle's documentation, etc.



☞ To open the storage compartment, press the left-hand end of the control and guide the lid to its open position notch.

If your vehicle is so equipped, it is lit when the lid is opened.

! **When driving**, keep the storage compartment closed. Otherwise, there is a risk of injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

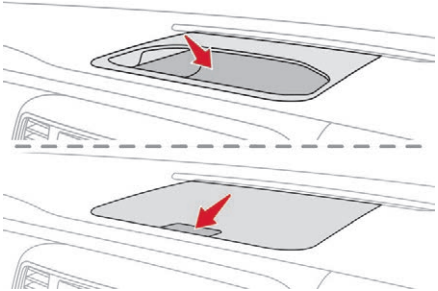
i Depending on the country of sale, with air conditioning, it gives access to the ventilation nozzle, delivering the same air-conditioned air as the vents in the passenger compartment.

Front door storage pockets

! Liquids carried in an open vessel (e.g. a cup or mug) could be spilt, presenting a risk of damage on contact with the controls in the dashboard and centre console. Be careful.

Upper glove box

This is located in the dashboard, behind the steering wheel.

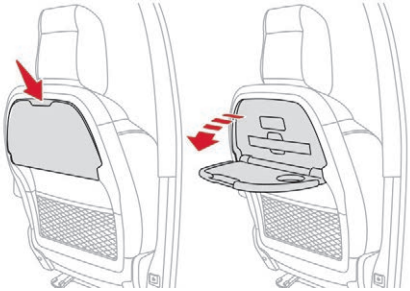


Press the control to open the lid (depending on version) then guide it to its fully open position. To close it, guide the lid then press the centre gently.

! Any liquid which could spill risks causing an electrical short circuit and therefore a potential fire.

"Aircraft" type tables

Fitted to the back of each front seat, these can be used to put objects on.



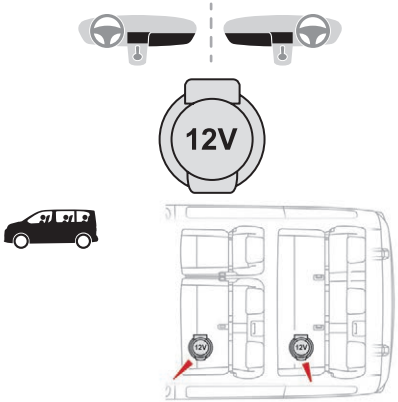
- To use the table, lower it fully until it locks in the low position.
- To store it, raise the table, passing the point of resistance, to the high position.

! On the passenger side, do not forget to fold it before placing the seat in the "table" position.
Do not place hard or heavy objects on the table. They could become dangerous projectiles in the event of emergency braking or impact.

i For more information on the **Front seats** and, in particular, the "table" position of the backrest, refer to the corresponding section.

12 V socket(s)

Depending on version.

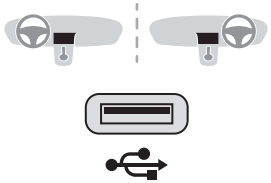


- To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 Watts), lift the cover and plug in a suitable adapter.

! Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging the accessory.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

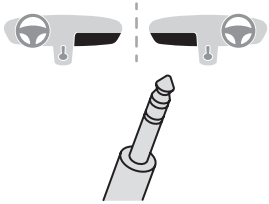
USB socket



It allows the connection of a portable device or a USB memory stick.
It reads the audio files which are sent to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers.
It is also possible to manage these files using the steering mounted controls or the audio system.

When the USB socket is used, the portable device charges automatically.
While charging, a message is displayed if the power consumption of the portable device exceeds the amperage supplied by the vehicle.
For more information on the use of this equipment, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section.

JACK socket



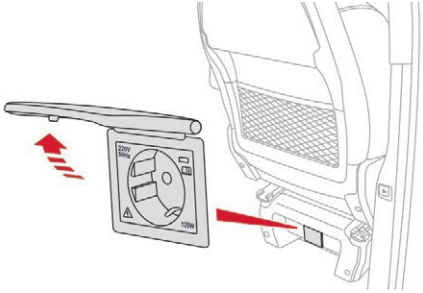
This allows the connection of a portable device for listening to audio files via the vehicle's speakers.
The files are managed using the portable device.

For more details on how to use this equipment, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section.

220 V socket

If your vehicle is so equipped, a 220 V/50 Hz socket (maximum power: 150 W) is located underneath the front right-hand seat and is therefore accessible from the second row.

It operates with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode of Stop & Start.



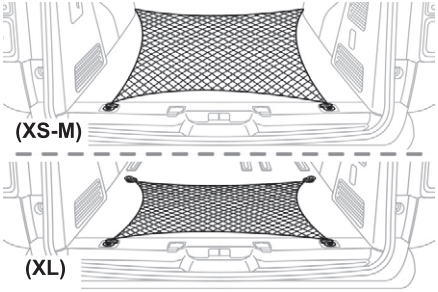
- Raise the cover.
- Check that the indicator lamp is on in green.
- Connect your multimedia or other electrical device (telephone charger, laptop computer, CD-DVD player, bottle warmer, etc.).

In the event of a fault, the warning lamp flashes green.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Connect only one device at a time to the socket (no extension lead or multi-socket connector).
Connect only devices with class II insulation (shown on the device).
Do not use a device with a metal case.

As a safety measure, when electrical consumption is high and when required by the vehicle's electrical system (particular weather conditions, electrical overload, etc.), the current supply to the socket will be cut off ; the green indicator lamp goes off.

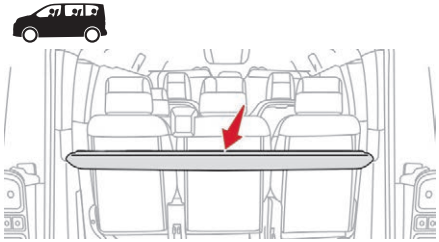
Luggage retaining net



Attached to the stowing rings on the rear floor, it allows objects to be held down.

! As a safety measure in the event of sudden braking, it is recommended that heavy objects are placed on the floor as close as possible to the backrest of the seat(s) or bench seat.

Load space cover

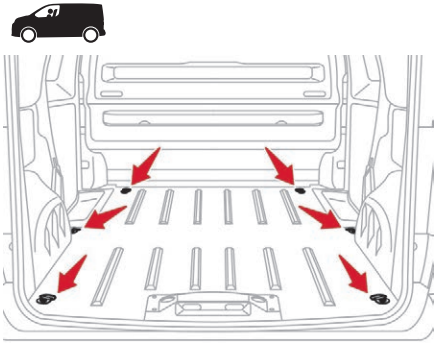


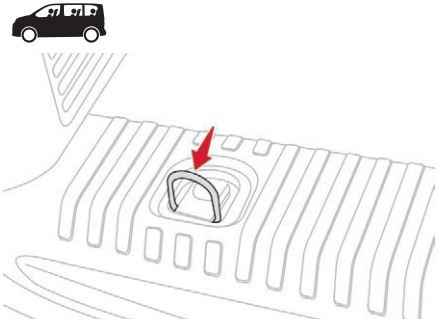
☞ To remove it, raise it.
☞ To install it, insert the guides into their housings.

! When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the load space cover can turn into projectiles.

Loading area fittings

Stowing rings

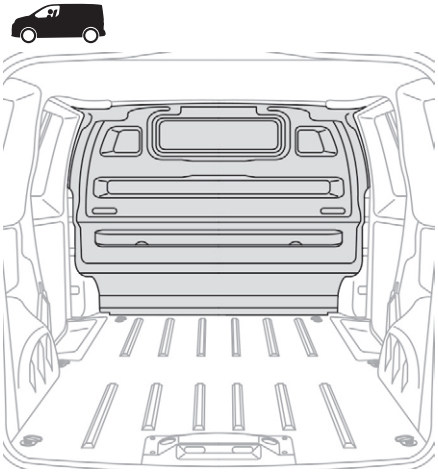




Use the stowing rings on the rear floor to secure your loads.

As a safety precaution in case of sharp braking, you are advised to place heavy objects as far forwards towards the cab as possible.
It is recommended that the load be secured firmly using the stowing rings on the floor.

Load restraint



On the floor, behind the front seats, a vertical partition protects the driver and front passengers against the risk of load movement.

Steel or glass partitions separate the loading area from the cab.

Recommendations on loading

! The weight of the load must comply with the Gross Train Weight (GTW).
For more information on **Engine technical data and towed loads**, refer to the corresponding section.

! If you are using a carrying system (roof bars/roof rack), comply with the maximum loads associated with this system.
For more information on **Roof bars/Roof rack**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Make sure that the size, shape and volume of the loads carried are compatible with the highway code and safety regulations and do not impair the driver's field of vision.

! The load must be evenly distributed in the loading area so as not to interfere with driving the vehicle.
Place the load close to the side panels, or even push it against the side panels between the wheel arches.
However, it is recommended that heavy objects are placed as close to the cab as possible as a precaution in case of sharp braking.

! Firmly secure all parts of the load using the stowing rings on the floor of the loading area.
For more information on the **Interior fittings**and in particular on the stowing rings, refer to the corresponding section.

! To avoid the risk of injury or accident, the load must be made stable so that it cannot slide, tip over, fall or be thrown. To do this, use only retaining straps that conform to current standards (DIN for example).
For more information on putting straps in place, refer to the manufacturer's user guide.
There must not be any empty space between the components of the load.
To prevent the load sliding, there must not be any empty space between the load and the panels of the vehicle.
As well as the straps, optimise the stability of the load with stable handling equipment (wedges, rigid blocks of wood or padding).

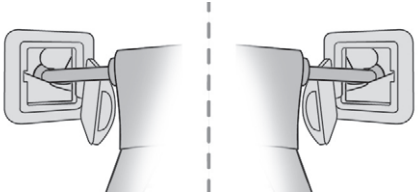
! When washing your vehicle, never clean the inside directly using a water jet.

Seating area fittings

High load retaining net

This allows the use of the entire loading capacity, up to the roof:
- behind the front seats in row 1, when the rear seats (and bench seats) in rows 2 and 3 are folded or removed,
- behind the rear seats (and bench seats) in row 2, when the rear seats (and bench seats) in row 3 are folded or removed.

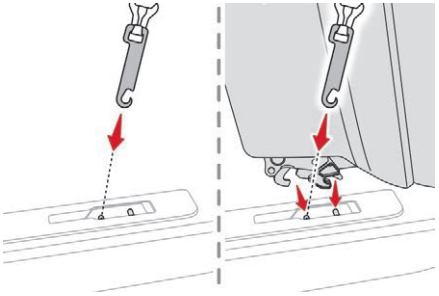
Upper fixings



☞ Unclip the anchorage cover in the roof on each side.

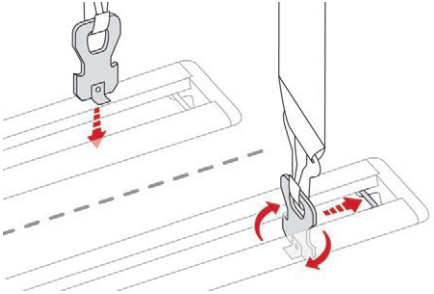
Lower fixings (behind row 1)

If your vehicle has **fixed** one-piece bench seats or seats and bench seats:



☞ On each side in row 2, insert the fixings in the floor anchorages (as shown above).

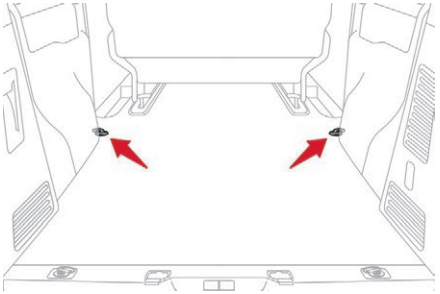
If your vehicle has seats and bench seats or individual seats on **rails**:



☞ On each side in row 2, insert the fixings in the floor anchorages then turn them a quarter turn to lock them in place (as shown above).

Place them as close as possible to the end of the rail.

Lower fixings (behind row 2)



☞ Use the stowing rings.

Fit the net

Unclip the upper fixing covers and secure the lower fixings (as previously described).

☞ Fold (table position) the seats and bench seats in rows 2 and 3 (according to equipment).

☞ Close the rear heating and air conditioning vents (depending on the equipment you have).

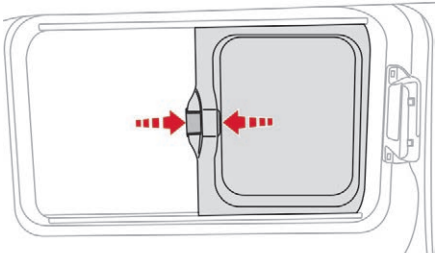
☞ Unroll the high load retaining net.

- Position the net upper fixings in the corresponding anchorages in the roof (first one side, then the other).
- Fully extend the straps.
- On each side, attach the bottom fixings of the net to the lower anchorages (behind row 1) or in the stowing rings (behind row 2).
- Tension the straps to extend the net.
- Check that the net is attached securely and properly extended.

! Never use the ISOFIX ring provided for fixing the strap of a child seat with Top Tether.

Rear windows in row 2

If the vehicle is so equipped, the side windows of row 2 can be opened.



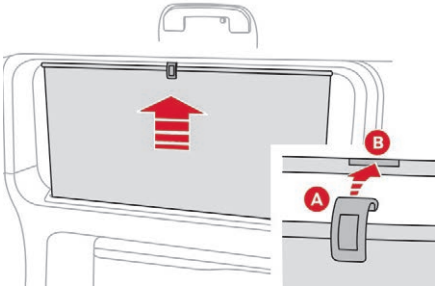
While driving, the windows must be closed or secured at one of the notches.

- Squeeze the two controls then move the window sideways.

i For more information on the **Child lock for rear windows**, refer to the corresponding section.

Side blinds

Fitted to the windows in row 2, they protect the passenger compartment from the sun's rays.



- Pull the tab **A** and anchor the blind on the hook **B**.

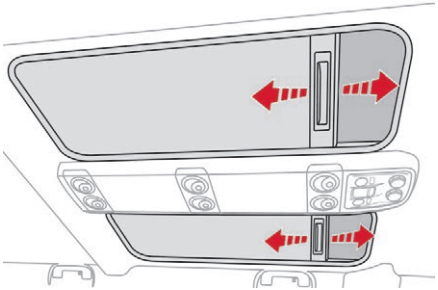
i Always guide the blind slowly using the tab, both up and down.

Panoramic sunroof

This is equipped with two manual and independent blinds, which improve thermal and acoustic comfort.

Blinds

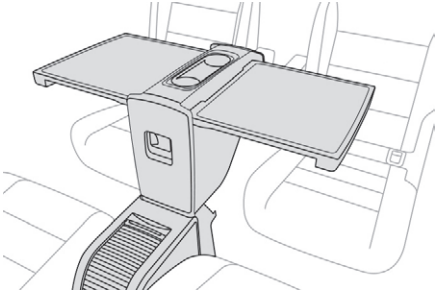
Opening/Closing



- Take one of the blinds by its grip and push it back or pull it forwards to the desired position.

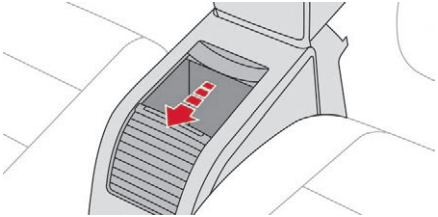
Retractable sliding table

Shine, Business Lounge



It comprises a closed central storage space with a lid. Unfolded, it provides a table with two tops on which objects can be placed. The central area includes two cup holders and can also be used to place small objects (credit card, pen, etc.).
The assembly is mounted on a runner allowing it to be positioned either in row 2 or row 3.

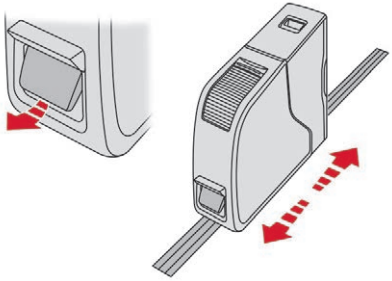
Storage



☞ Slide back the cover for access to 11 litres of storage space.

! The storage space can only support a maximum weight of 3 kg ; do not exceed this maximum load in use.

Moving forward or backward



☞ Lift the control (without going beyond the point of resistance) and slide the assembly forwards or backwards.

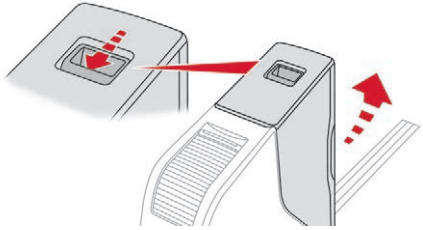
☞ Release the control when it is in the desired position.

☞ Check that the table is secured on the runner. If this is not the case, move the assembly slightly to the next notch on the runner.

i You can move the table in both the open and stowed position. However, to ensure safety, it is advised that you handle the assembly in the stowed position.

! For the table to run smoothly, ensure that no objects are blocking the space used by the runner on the floor.
Before manoeuvring the table, check that there is nothing on the table.

Unfolding

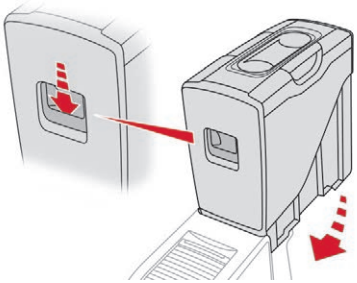


☞ Operate the control on the top and pull the table assembly up until it clicks into place.

☞ Pull each table top fully up then pivot them on each side into the horizontal position.

Folding

☞ Raise each table top, going beyond the point of resistance, to the vertical position.
☞ Push each table top down into its housing until it clicks into place.



☞ Push the control then tip the table assembly downward until it clicks into place.

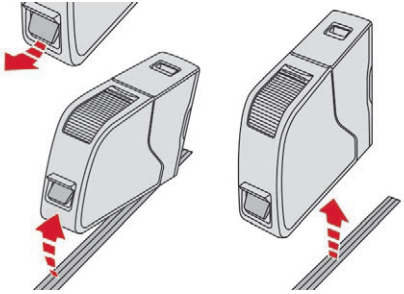
! Before stowing the table tops, check that they are clear. Before tipping the assembly down, check that the two table tops have clicked home in the low position and that there is nothing in the cup holder area (such as a can or pen).

Cup holders

Two cups or cans and small objects (such as a credit card, portable ashtray or pen) can be carried in the middle of the unfolded table.

! Liquids carried in an open vessel (a cup or mug) could be spilt, presenting a risk. Be careful.
Never use the table in this position while the vehicle is being driven.

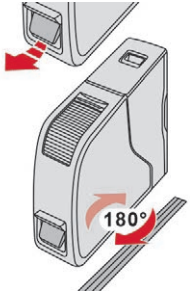
Removal



☞ Raise the control fully to release the anchorages and tip the table assembly forward.
☞ Remove the table assembly through the sliding door in row 2.

! Check that there is nothing in the space around the runner on the floor, so that the table disengages cleanly.

Changing the direction



With the table removed, you can turn it 180°.

ℹ Remove a seat to make this easier.

Refitting

☞ Check that there is no object obstructing the runner and preventing locking.

- Check that the control is in the high position (locking mechanism engaged). Otherwise, lift the control as far as it can go to engage the mechanism.
- Place the front of the table on the runner.
- Taking care not to interfere with the control, tip the assembly down at the rear until it clicks into place.
- Check that the assembly is locked in the runner. If this is not the case, move the assembly slightly to the next notch on the runner.

! Otherwise there is a risk of injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

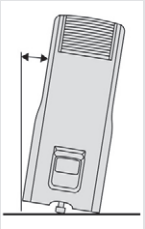
- Release the control until the guide latches in the runner.

! Be careful of passengers' feet when manoeuvring the assembly.

Storage off the runner

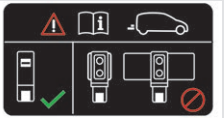
! If removing and storing the table out of the vehicle, ensure that it is placed in a clean area, so as to avoid introducing any foreign bodies into the mechanisms.
The table must be placed outside the vehicle on a flat and level surface, resting on the guide so as not to damage visible parts.

!



Caution, when out of the vehicle, the table leans to the right or left when put down.

!

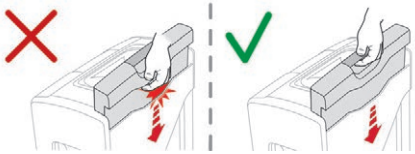


Incorrect use of the table could cause serious injury.
Never use the table in the open or unfolded position while the vehicle is in motion. Any object on the table will become a dangerous projectile in the event of sudden braking.
Ensure that the table is correctly stowed in the low position before moving off.
Never use the table tops as seats or lean on them.
A label affixed to the side of the table gives a reminder of this.

! Never place hot objects such as saucepans or frying pans on the table, as you risk damaging its surface (risk of fire).

! With the table deployed, each top can bear a maximum load of 10 kg. If you do not observe this load limit, you risk damaging a part of or the whole table.
Never raise the table when it is between individual seats ; this risks damaging the table tops.

To move the table or an individual seat forwards or backwards, make sure that the seat's backrest is upright and the table is stowed.



When stowing the table tops, never put your hand in the sliding area, you may get your fingers trapped. Use the handle provided.

Heating and Ventilation

Advice

Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

- ☞ To ensure that the air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
- ☞ Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard ; this is used for regulation of the automatic air conditioning system.
- ☞ Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- ☞ If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off or with prolonged operation of the recirculation of interior air - risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality!

If the interior temperature is very high after the vehicle has stood for a long time in the sunshine, air the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system

☞ Ensure that the cabin filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

It is recommend to use a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).

☞ To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, have it checked according to the recommendations in the Maintenance and Warranty Guide.

Contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R134A

Depending on version and country of sale, the air conditioning system contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R134A. Gas charge: 0.5 kg (+/- 0.025 kg), GWP index 1,430 t (equivalent in CO_2: 0.751 t).

Stop & Start

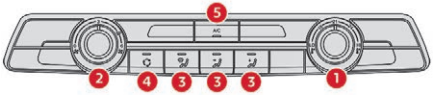
The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running. Temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.

For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

Heating

Manual air conditioning

The air conditioning system only operates with the engine running.



1. Temperature.
2. Air flow.
3. Air distribution
4. Recirculation of interior air.
5. Air conditioning on/off.

Air flow

☞ Turn the thumbwheel **2** to obtain a comfortable air flow.

If you place the air flow control to the **minimum** position (off), the temperature in the vehicle will no longer be controlled. A slight air flow can still be felt however, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

Temperature

☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** from "**LO**" (cold) to "**HI**" (hot) to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

Air distribution

☞ Press button **3** successively to direct the air flow towards:

- the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells,
- the footwells.
- the central vents, the side vents and the footwells,
- the windscreen, the side windows, the central vents, the side vents and the footwells,

- the central and side vents,
- the windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting).

Air conditioning

With the engine running, the air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It allows you:
- in summer, to lower the temperature,
- to increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

On/off

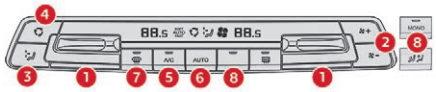
☞ Press button **5** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

When the air conditioning is in operation, to cool the air more quickly, you can use interior air recirculation for a few moments by pressing button **4**. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

ℹ The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

! Switching the system off may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning



1. Temperature.
2. Air flow.
3. Air distribution.
4. Recirculation of interior air.
5. Air conditioning on/off.
6. Automatic comfort mode.
7. Visibility programme.
8. "Mono" function or Rear heating and air conditioning on/off (depending on version).

Automatic comfort mode

☞ Press the "**AUTO**" button **6** successively.

The active mode appears in the display screen, as described below:

SOFT AUTO	Provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.
AUTO	Offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation.
AUTO FAST	Provides dynamic and effective air flow.

ℹ When the engine is cold, the air flow will only reach its optimum level gradually to prevent too much cold air being distributed.
In cold weather, it favours the distribution of warm air to the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells only.

Manual mode

It is possible to make a different choice from that offered by the system by changing a setting. The other functions will still be managed automatically.
As soon as a setting is changed, the "**AUTO**" symbol disappears.

Deactivating the system

☞ Press button **2** "**-**" until the fan symbol disappears.

This action switches off all of the functions of the system.
Temperature is no longer controlled. A slight air flow can still be felt, however, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

☞ Press button **2** "**+**" to switch the system on again.

Temperature

The driver and front passenger can each set the temperature to suit their requirements. The value shown on the display is a level of comfort, not a temperature in Celsius or Fahrenheit.

☞ Push button **1** down to decrease the value or up to increase it.

ℹ A setting of around 21 provides optimum comfort. Depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal. In addition, it is recommended that you avoid a left/right setting difference of more than 3.

ℹ On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value setting, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach the required level of comfort. The system compensates automatically and corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

ℹ For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.

☞ Push button **1** down until **"LO"** is displayed or up until **"HI"** is displayed.

"Mono" function

The comfort setting for the passenger's side can be indexed to the driver's comfort setting (mono-zone).

☞ Press the corresponding button **8** to activate/deactivate the function. The indicator lamp in the button is on when the function is activated.

The function is deactivated automatically if a passenger uses the temperature control.

Rear heating - air conditioning

☞ Press the corresponding button **8** to activate/deactivate the function.

ℹ For more information, refer to the **Rear heating - air conditioning** section.

Visibility programme

☞ Press button **7** "**Visibility**" to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows more quickly.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

☞ Press button **7** "**Visibility**" again to stop the programme.

Or

☞ Press button **6** "**AUTO**" to return to the automatic comfort programme.

Air conditioning

With the engine running, the air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It is used to:

- lower the temperature in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

On/off

☞ Press button **5** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

When the air conditioning is in operation, to cool the air more quickly, you can use interior air recirculation for a few moments by pressing button **4**. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

! Switching the system off may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

Air distribution

☞ Press button **3** successively to direct the air flow towards:

- the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells,
- the footwells.
- the central vents, the side vents and the footwells,
- the windscreen, the side windows, the central vents, the side vents and the footwells,
- the central and side vents,
- the windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting).

Air flow

☞ Press buttons **2** to increase/decrease the air flow.

The symbol for air flow (a fan) appears. It is filled in or emptied progressively according to the value requested.

Recirculation of interior air

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows. Recirculation of the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and fumes.

This allows hot or cold air to be delivered more quickly when required.

☞ Press button **4** to recirculate the interior air/permit the intake of exterior air.

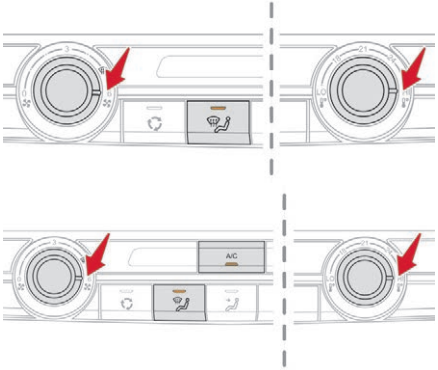
When the interior air recirculation is active, the symbol appears or the indicator lamp comes on (depending on version).

! Avoid prolonged use of recirculation of the interior air - risk of misting and deterioration of air quality!

Front demisting - defrosting

These markings on the control panel indicate the positioning of the controls for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

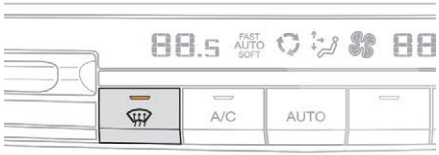
Heating or manual air conditioning



☞ Put the air flow, temperature and distribution controls to the appropriately marked position.

☞ For air conditioning, press this button ; its indicator lamp comes on.

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning



☞ Press this button to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible.

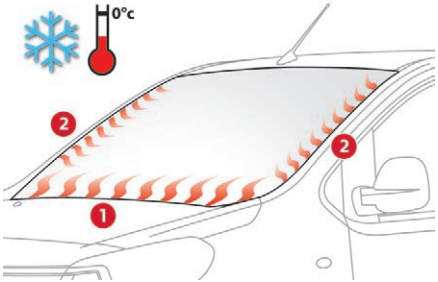
The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

☞ To turn it off, press this button again or press “**AUTO**”.

The system is reactivated with the values prior to the deactivation.

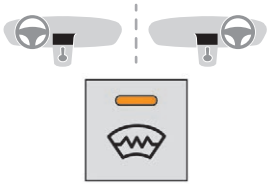
Heated windscreen and washer jets

Depending on country of sale.
This function heats the windscreen and washer jets under cold conditions.



In area **1**, the heating frees the wiper blades from the windscreen when they are stuck by snow or ice.
In area **2**, the heating improves visibility by avoiding the accumulation of snow when the wipers are operating.

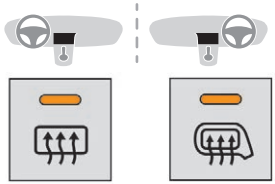
Switching on



☞ With the engine running, press this button ; its indicator lamp comes on.

The period of operation depends on the exterior temperature.
Pressing this button again switches the function off ; its indicator lamp goes off.

Rear screen and/or door mirrors demisting - defrosting



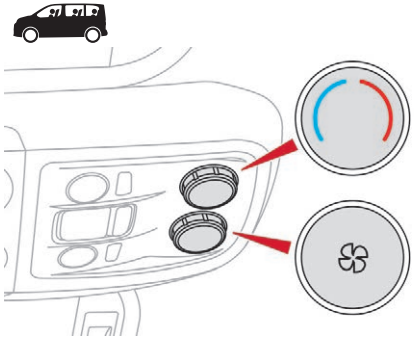
On/Off

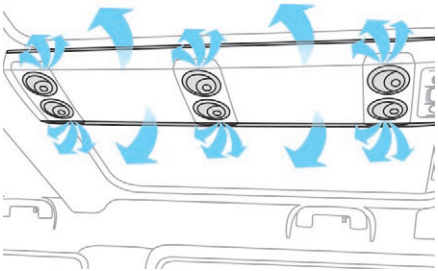
☞ Press this button to switch on/off the defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors (if the vehicle is so equipped).
The indicator lamp in the button is **on** when the function is **activated**.
Demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

Switch off the defrosting as soon as it is no longer necessary, as reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.

Demisting and defrosting only operates with the engine running.

Rear heating - air conditioning





If the vehicle is fitted with a rear air conditioning unit, located in the roof, this system allows the distribution of air conditioned and heated air via a distribution rail and individual outlets.

Air flow

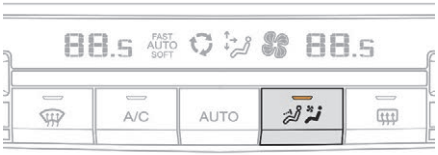
☞ Turn the dial to increase or decrease the air flow.

Comfort temperature

- Turn the thumbwheel from blue (cold) to red (hot) to modulate the temperature to your liking.

This control simultaneously adjusts the temperature and the location of the air delivery:
- blue: the air is delivered mainly at roof level,
- red: the air is delivered mainly by the vent located in row 3 on the right.

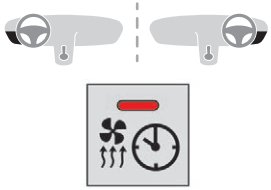
Activation/Deactivation



Depending on version, this button is accessible at the front, from the automatic dual-zone air conditioning control panel.

☞ Press this button to activate/deactivate the operation of the rear controls.

Additional Heating / Ventilation



Heating

This is an additional and separate system which heats the passenger compartment and improves defrosting performance.

This indicator lamp is lit while the system is programmed or set in operation remotely via the remote control.
It flashes during the whole duration of the heating and goes off at the end of the heating cycle or when stopped using the remote control.

Ventilation

This system allows ventilation of the passenger compartment with exterior air to improve the temperature experienced on entering the vehicle in summer.

Programming

With CITROËN Connect Nav, use the remote control to start/stop the additional heating.
With a Bluetooth® audio system or CITROËN Connect Radio, use the remote control to start/stop the additional heating and/or adjust the preheating times.

With Bluetooth® audio system

☞ Press the **MENU** button to access the main menu.

☞ Select "**Pre-heat. / Pre-ventil.** ".

☞ Select "**Activation** " and, if necessary for programming, select "**Parameters** ".

☞ Select "**Heating** " to heat the engine and passenger compartment or "**Ventilation** " to ventilate the passenger compartment.

☞ Select:
- the 1st clock to programme/memorise the time at which the pre-heating temperature will be reached,
- the 2nd clock to programme/memorise a second time at which the pre-heating temperature will be reached,

ℹ Using these two clocks and depending on the season you can, for example, select one or the other start time.
A message in the screen confirms your choice.

With CITROËN Connect Radio

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Then press "**Programmable heating/ventilation**".

☞ Select the "**Status**" tab to activate/deactivate the system.

☞ Select the "**Other settings**" tab to choose "**Heating**" to heat the engine and passenger compartment or "**Ventilation**" to ventilate the passenger compartment.

☞ Then programme/preset the time at which the pre-heating temperature will be reached for each selection.

Press this button to save.

With CITROËN Connect Nav

☞ Press the "**Applications**" menu.

☞ Press the "**Vehicle Apps**" tab.

☞ Press "**Temperature programming**".

☞ Press the "**Status**" tab to activate/deactivate the system.
☞ Press the "**Parameters**" tab to select "**Heating**" mode to heat the engine and passenger compartment or "**Ventilation**" mode to ventilate the passenger compartment.
☞ Then programme/preset the activation time for each selection.
☞ Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Long range remote control

This enables you to switch the heating in the passenger compartment on or off from a distance.
The range of the remote control is about 0.6 miles (1 km) in open country.

Switching on

☞ Pressing and holding this button starts the heating immediately (confirmed by the temporary illumination of the green indicator lamp).

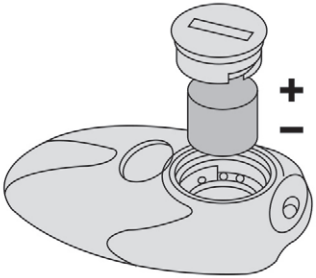
Switching off

☞ Pressing and holding this button stops the heating immediately (confirmed by the temporary illumination of the red indicator lamp).

The indicator lamp in the remote control flashes for about 2 seconds if the vehicle has not received the signal.
Then repeat the command after having changed location.

Changing the battery

If the indicator lamp in the remote control becomes orange, the state of charge of the battery is low.
If the indicator lamp is not on, the battery is discharged.



☞ Use a coin to unscrew the cap and replace the battery.

Do not throw remote control batteries away as they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

The maximum heating period is about 45 minutes depending on the climatic conditions.

The ventilation is activated provided that the battery is sufficiently charged.
The heating is activated provided that:
- the fuel and the battery charge levels are sufficient,
- the engine has been started since the previous heating cycle.

The programmable heating is supplied by the vehicle's fuel tank. Before use, ensure that there is enough fuel left in the tank.
If the fuel in the tank is at the reserve level, it is strongly recommended not to programme the heating.
The additional heating must always be switched off while refuelling to avoid any risk of fire or explosion.

To avoid the risks of poisoning or asphyxia, the programmable heating must not be used, even for short periods, in a closed environment such as a garage or workshop which is not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system.
Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface (dry grass, fallen leaves, paper, etc.) - risk of fire!

Glazed surfaces such as the rear screen or windscreen can become very hot in places.
Never put objects on these surfaces ; never touch these surfaces - risk of burns!

Independent additional heating

Depending on the country of sale, this is an additional and independent system which heats the hot water circuit of the Diesel engine to improve comfort and to raise the temperature of the cold engine. It improves demisting and defrosting performance. With the engine idling or the vehicle stationary, it is normal to notice a high-pitched whistling and some emissions of smoke or odour.

The temperature near the heating system must not exceed 120°C. A higher temperature (e.g. in a paint oven) could damage the components of electronic circuits.
The additional heating is supplied by the vehicle's fuel tank. Make sure that the low fuel warning lamp is not on.

To avoid the risks of poisoning or suffocation, the additional heating must not be used, even for short periods, in a closed environment such as a garage or workshop which is not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system.

Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface (for example: dry grass, fallen leaves, paper, etc.) - risk of fire!

Have the additional heating checked at least once a year, at the beginning of winter.
For maintenance and repairs, you must only contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

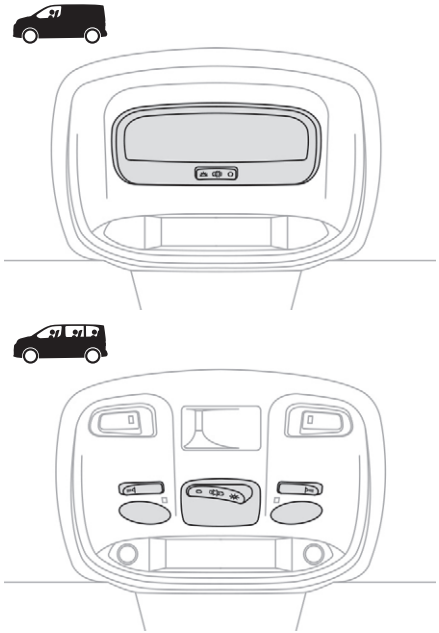
Courtesy lamp(s)

Front: comes on when one of the front or rear doors is opened (sliding side door and depending on equipment, left-hand side-hinged door or tailgate).
Rear or row 2 and row 3: comes on when one of the rear doors is opened (sliding side door and depending on equipment, left-hand side-hinged door or tailgate).

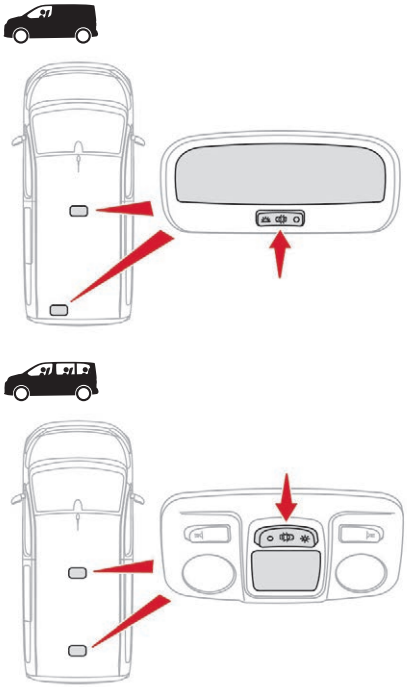
Permanently on, ignition on.

Permanently off.

Front



Rear



Automatic switching on/off

The front courtesy lamp comes on when the key is removed from the ignition switch.
All of the courtesy lamps come on when the vehicle is unlocked, when one of the corresponding doors is opened and when locating the vehicle using the remote control.
They go off gradually after the ignition is switched on and when the vehicle is locked.

! Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamp.

Individual reading lamp

If fitted to the vehicle, these are switched on and off by means of a manual switch.
With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.

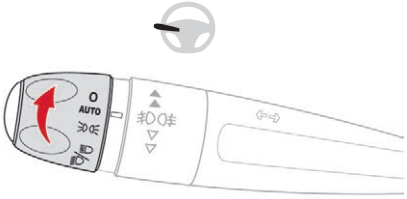
! Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamp.

Lighting control stalk

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal ; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Travelling abroad
If using your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling on-coming drivers.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Main lighting



O Lighting off (ignition off)/ Daytime running lamps (engine running).

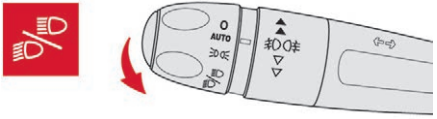
AUTO Automatic illumination of headlamps/ Daytime running lamps.

Sidelamps only.

Dipped or main beam headlamps.

Operation of the selected lighting is confirmed by the illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp.

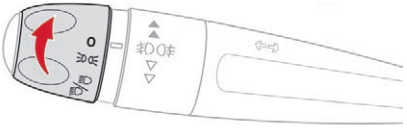
Headlamp dipping



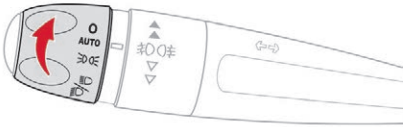
Pull the stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In the lighting off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

Without AUTO lighting

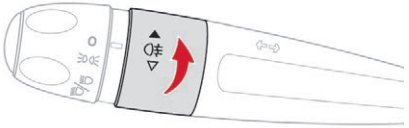


With AUTO lighting



Fog light selection ring

With rear foglamp only

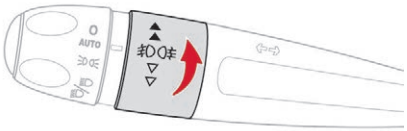


It operates with the sidelamps on.

☞ Turn the ring forwards to switch it on and backwards to switch it off.

When the lighting is switched off automatically (version with AUTO lighting), the foglamp and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.

With front and rear foglamps



They operate with the dipped beam headlamps on, in manual or auto mode.

Turn and release the ring:

- once forwards to switch on the front foglamps and then a second time for the rear foglamps.
- once backwards to switch off the rear foglamps and then a second time for the front foglamps.

If the lighting is switched off automatically (with AUTO model) or the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps will remain on.

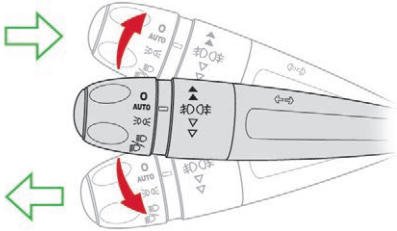
- Turn the ring backwards to switch the foglamps off ; the sidelamps will then switch off.

When the lighting is left on

An audible signal when a front door is opened warns the driver that the vehicle's exterior lighting is on, with the ignition off and in manual lighting mode.
In this case, switching off the lighting stops the audible signal.
The lighting goes off when you switch off the ignition, but you can always switch it on again using the lighting control stalk.

In good or rainy weather, by both day and night, use of the front foglamps and the rear foglamps are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.
In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.
Switch off the front and rear foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

Direction indicators



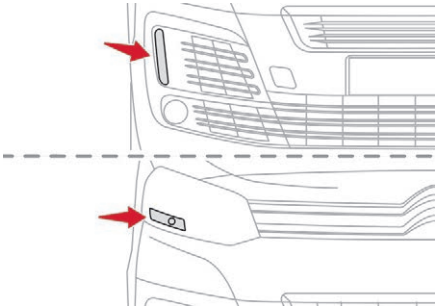
- Left or right: lower or raise the lighting control stalk, beyond the point of resistance.

If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than 20 seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 50 mph (80 km/h).

Three flashes

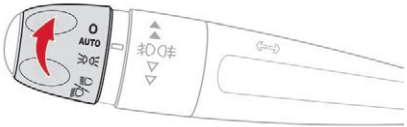
- Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance ; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

Daytime running lamps/ Sidelamps



If the vehicle is so equipped, they come on automatically when the engine is started, when the lighting control stalk is in position "**0**" or "**AUTO**".

Automatic headlamp illumination



When a low level of ambient light is detected by a sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They can also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as the automatic rain sensitive wipers.
As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

☞ Turn the ring to the **"AUTO"** position. When the function is activated, a message is displayed.

☞ Turn the ring to **another position**. Deactivation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on and this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message.

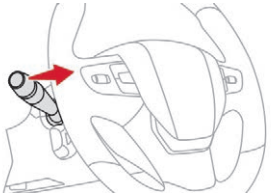
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically. Do not cover the sunshine sensor, integrated with the rain sensor and located at the top of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror ; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

Guide-me-home and welcome lighting

Guide-me-home lighting

Manual



Switching on/off

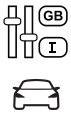
☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting control stalk to switch the function on/off.

Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically at the end of a given period of time.

Automatic

With the "Automatic headlamp illumination" function activated (lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position), when the light is poor, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.
With the ring in the "**AUTO**" position, when the light is poor, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

With audio system or touch screen



The activation, deactivation and the duration of the guide-me-home lighting are set in the vehicle configuration menu.

Exterior welcome lighting

The remote operation of the lighting makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated when the lighting control is in the "**AUTO**" position and the level of light detected by the sunshine sensor is low.

Switching on

Press the open padlock on the remote control or one of the front door handles with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The dipped beam headlamps and the sidelamps come on ; your vehicle is also unlocked.

Switching off

The exterior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

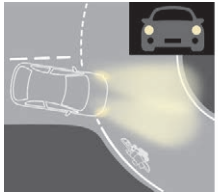
Programming

With audio system or touch screen

The activation, deactivation and duration of the welcome lighting can be set via the vehicle configuration menu.

Cornering lighting

If fitted to the vehicle, this system makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the main or dipped beam headlamps are on and the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, junctions, parking manoeuvres, etc.).



Switching on

This system starts:
- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on,

or
- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

Switching off

The system does not operate:
- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 25 mph (40 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

Programming

With audio system or touch screen

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

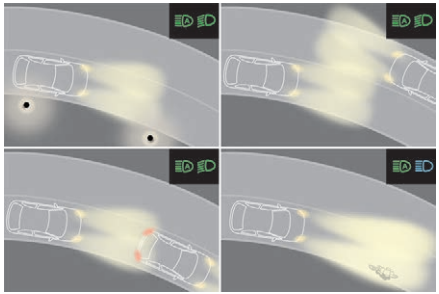
This system is activated by default.

Automatic headlamp dipping

This system automatically changes between dipped and main beam headlamps according to the brightness and driving conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

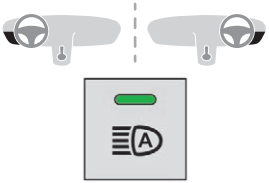
! This system is a driving aid.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use for the prevailing conditions of light, visibility and traffic, and for observation of driving and vehicle regulations.

i The system will be operational as soon as you exceed 16 mph (25 km/h).
If the speed drops below 9 mph (15 km/h), the system no longer operates.



Activation / Deactivation

With/without audio system



☞ To activate or deactivate the system, press this button.
The indicator lamp for the button is **on** when the function is **activated**.

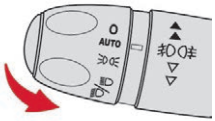
With touch screen

Activation or deactivation is done in the vehicle configuration menu.

☞ Then put the lighting control stalk ring in the "AUTO" or "Dipped/main beam position".

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.



Flashing the headlamps pauses the function and the system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode.

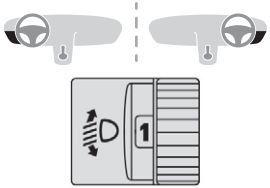
i The driver can intervene at any time if the circumstances dictate by pulling on the lighting control stalk to switch between main and dipped beam.

i Flashing the headlamps does not deactivate the system.
The system state remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

The system may suffer interference or not work correctly:
- under conditions of poor visibility (for example, snowfall, heavy rain or thick fog, etc.),
- if the windscreen is dirty, misted or obscured (by a sticker, etc.) in front of the camera,
- if the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.

If the fog is too dense, the system is automatically deactivated.
The system is not able to detect:
- road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians,
- road users whose lighting is obscured, such as vehicles running behind a safety barrier (on a motorway, for example),
- road users at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on twisty roads, on crossroads.

Headlamp beam height adjustment



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamps should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0 Empty.
1 Partial load.
2 Medium load.
3 Maximum authorised load.
4 5 6 Not used.

0 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
1 5 people.
2 6 to 9 people.
3 Driver + maximum authorised load.
4 5 6 Not used.

The initial setting is position **0**.

Interior ambient lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.

Switching on

At night, the front roof lighting and panoramic roof lighting (if fitted to your vehicle) comes on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.
The ambient lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.

Programming

With audio system or touch screen

The activation, deactivation and the choice of brightness of the ambience lighting can be set via the vehicle configuration menu.

Wiper control stalk

Programming

Your vehicle may also include some functions that can be activated/deactivated:

- automatic windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

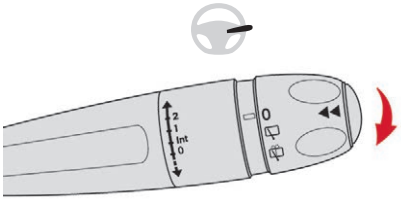
> In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.

> Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

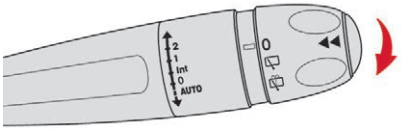
Manual controls

The wipers are controlled directly by the driver.

With manual wiping (intermittent)



With AUTO wiping



Front wipers

Raise or lower the control to the desired position to change the wiping speed.

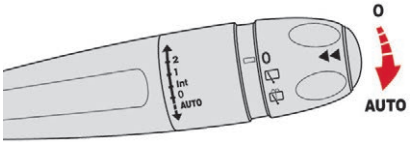
2	Fast wiping (heavy rain).
1	Normal wiping (moderate rain).
Int	Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).
0	Off.

↓	Single wipe (press down or pull the stalk briefly towards you, then release).

or

AUTO ↓	Automatic wiping (press down, then release). Single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

Automatic windscreen wiping



The windscreen wipers operate automatically once rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rain, without any action on the part of the driver.

Switching on

Give a short downwards push to the control stalk.
A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.
This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

Switching off

Give the control stalk a brief push downwards or shift the control stalk to a different position (Int, 1 or 2).
This indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

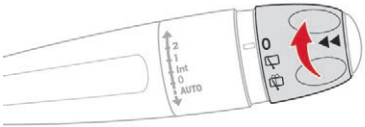
ℹ The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards, if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

Operating fault

If a fault occurs with the automatic windscreen wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the top of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.
Switch off the automatic windscreen wipers when using an automatic car wash.
In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

Rear wiper



Off.

Intermittent wipe.

Wash-wipe (set duration).

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the windscreen wipers are operating.

Activation/Deactivation

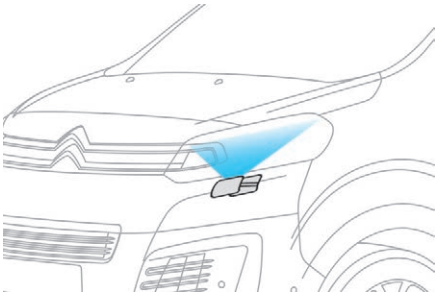
With audio system or touch screen

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

ℹ This system is activated by default.

! If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a bicycle carrier on the tailgate, deactivate the automatic rear wiper.

Windscreen and headlamp wash



☞ Pull the wiper control stalk towards you.

The screenwash then the windscreen wipers operate for a pre-determined time.
The headlamp washers only operate when **the dipped beam headlamps are on** and the vehicle is **moving**.
With daytime running lamps on, to activate the headlamp wash, position the lighting control stalk in the dipped beam headlamps position.

On vehicles fitted with automatic air conditioning, any action on the windscreen wash control results in temporary closing of the air intake to avoid odours inside the passenger compartment.

Screenwash/headlamp wash level low

For vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, when the fluid reservoir low level is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

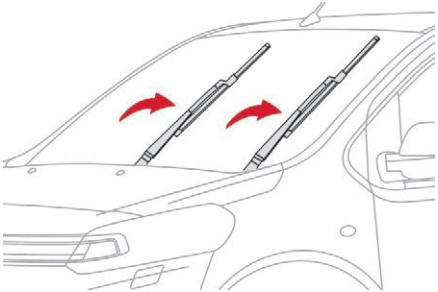
It comes on when the ignition is switched on, or every time the stalk is operated, until the reservoir is refilled.
Next time you stop, refill the screenwash/headlamp wash reservoir.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

This maintenance position is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:
- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

Before removing a front wiper blade



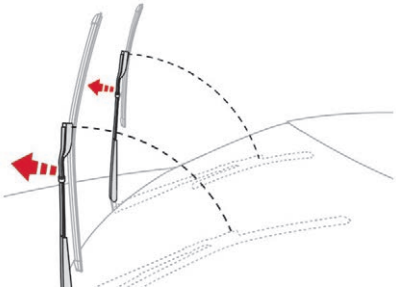
☞ Within one minute of switching off the ignition, any operation of the wiper control stalk will position the wiper blades vertically.
☞ Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

After refitting a front wiper blade

☞ To return the wiper blades to their initial position, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Changing a wiper blade

Removing/refitting at the front



☞ Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.
☞ Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

! Take care not to hold the arms at the jet locations.
Do not touch the wiper blade as you may cause irreparable damage.
Do not release them while moving them - risk of damaging the windscreen!

☞ Clean the windscreen using screenwash fluid.

i Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

☞ Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.
☞ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
☞ Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.
☞ Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then fold it carefully, guiding it to the windscreen.

Removing/refitting at the rear

☞ Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.
☞ Clean the rear screen using screenwash fluid.
☞ Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.
☞ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
☞ Once again hold the arm by the rigid section then fold it carefully, guiding it to the rear screen.

General safety recommendations

! Labels are affixed in different locations on your vehicle. They include safety warnings and vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they are an integral part of your vehicle.

! For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

! Depending on country regulations, some safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

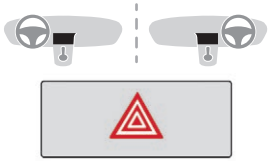
! **We draw your attention to the following points:**

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by CITROËN may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for CITROËN dealers or qualified workshop, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer will result in the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

! **Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters**

Before installing a radio communication transmitter with an external aerial, you must without fail contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

Hazard warning lamps



☞ When you press this red button, all four direction indicators flash.

It can operate with the ignition off.

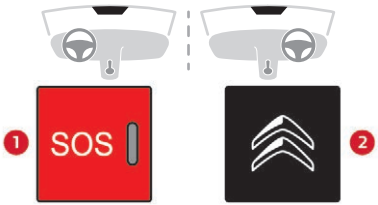
Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, as well as when the ABS function is invoked or in the event of an impact, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

Emergency or assistance call



Localised Emergency Call

In an emergency, press button **1** for more than 2 seconds.

Illumination of the indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call" service*.

Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

The indicator lamp stays on while the call is maintained.

"Localised Emergency Call" immediately locates your vehicle and contacts you in your own language**, and - if necessary - requests the appropriate public emergency services to be sent**. In countries where the service is not operational, or where the locating service has been expressly refused, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically and independently of the deployment of any airbags.

* In accordance with the general conditions of service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

** According to the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and telematic services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Operation of the system

- Indicator lamp on (for 3 seconds) upon switching on the ignition: the system is operating correctly.
- Fixed red indicator lamp: system malfunction.
- Flashing red indicator lamp: replace the back-up battery.

In the last 2 cases, the emergency and assistance call services may not work. Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i The system fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

Localised Assistance Call

If the vehicle breaks down, press button **2** for more than 2 seconds to request assistance (confirmed by a voice message**).

Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

** According to the geographic coverage of ‘Localised Emergency Call’, ‘Localised Assistance Call’ and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and of the telematic services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Geolocation

Deactivate/reactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing buttons **1** and **2** and then a single press of button **2** to confirm.

i If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify them to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

i For technical reasons, in particular to improve the quality of telematic services for customers, the Manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system at any time.

i If you benefit from the Citroën Connect Box offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.

Audible warning

☞ Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic stability control programme incorporating the following systems:
- Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) and Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBFD).
- Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
- Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
- Dynamic stability control (DSC).

Definitions

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contribute towards improved control in corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.
The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.
The electronic brake force distribution system manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.
It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

This system optimises traction in order to avoid wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, this system monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Intelligent traction control

If you vehicle has this function, it features a system to help driving on snow: **intelligent traction control.**
This system detects situations of difficult surface grip that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.
In these situations, the **intelligent traction control** limits the amount of wheel spin to provide the best traction and trajectory control for your vehicle.

The use of snow tyres is strongly recommended on surfaces offering low levels of grip.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

The fixed illumination of this warning lamp signals that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Illumination of this warning lamp, coupled with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, signals that there is a fault with the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
Call a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

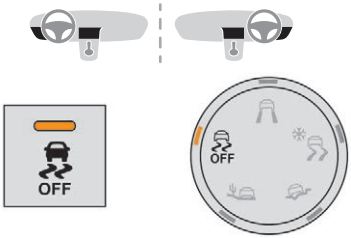
Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

When braking in an emergency, press very firmly and maintain this pressure.

When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Dynamic stability control (DSC) and anti-slip regulation (ASR)



Activation

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.
As soon as they detect a problem of grip or trajectory, these systems act on the operation of the engine and brakes.

This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Deactivation/Reactivation

In exceptional conditions (moving a vehicle that is bogged down in mud, stuck in snow, on loose soil, etc.), it may prove useful to deactivate the DSC/ASR systems, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.
It is however recommended that the systems be reactivated as soon as possible.

These systems are reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched off, or from 31 mph (50 km/h).
However, below 31 mph (50 km/h), the systems can be reactivated manually.

Deactivating using button or Grip control

Press this button or turn the dial to this position.

The indicator lamp in the button or dial comes on: the DSC/ASR systems no longer act on the operation of the engine.

Deactivating using touch screen

In the "**Driving/Vehicle**" menu, deactivate the DSC/ASR systems.

This is confirmed by the illumination of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel and the display of a message.

The systems no longer have an effect on engine operation.

Reactivating using button or Grip control

Press this button.

Or

Turn the dial to this position.

The indicator lamp in the button or dial goes off.

Reactivating using touch screen

In the "**Driving/Vehicle**" menu, activate the DSC/ASR systems.

This is confirmed by this indicator lamp going out in the instrument panel and the display of a message.

Malfunction

Illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, indicates a fault with the system.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the systems checked.

ASR / DSC
These systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.
It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, black ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.
The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding as much the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components as the assembly and repair procedures used by CITROËN dealers.
The use of snow tyres is recommended, in order to be able to benefit from the efficiency of these systems in winter conditions.
In this case, it is essential to equip the four wheels with tyres approved for your vehicle.

Advanced Grip Control

Special patented traction control system which improves driveability on snow, mud and sand.
This system, whose operation has been optimised for each situation, allows you to manoeuvre in most conditions of poor grip (encountered during passenger vehicle use).
Associated with all-seasons Peak Mountain Snow Flake tyres, this system offers a compromise between safety, adhesion and traction.
The accelerator pedal should be pressed sufficiently to allow the system to use the power of the engine. Operation at high engine speeds is completely normal.
A five-position selector knob allows you to choose the setting best suited to the driving conditions encountered.
An indicator lamp associated with each mode comes on, accompanied by the display of a message to confirm your choice.

Operating modes

Standard (ESC)

This mode is calibrated for a low level of wheel spin, based on the different levels of grip normally encountered on the road.

Every time the ignition is switched off, the system automatically resets to this mode.

Snow

This mode adapts its strategy to the conditions of grip encountered for each of the two front wheels on moving off. (mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))

All-terrain (mud, damp grass, etc.)

This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much torque as possible.

When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.
(mode active up to 31 mph (50 km/h))

Sand

This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.
(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))

! Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

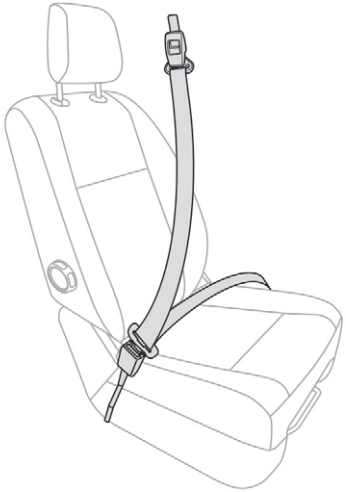
i OFF The ASR and DSC systems can be deactivated by turning the knob to the "**OFF**" position.

The ASR and DSC systems will no longer have an effect on engine operation or the brakes in the event of an involuntary change of trajectory.
These systems are reactivated automatically from 31 mph (50 km/h) or every time the ignition is switched on.

! **Recommendations**
Your vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads but it allows you to occasionally drive on other less passable terrain.
However, it does not permit off-road driving such as:
- crossing and driving on terrain which could damage the underbody or strip away components (fuel pipe, fuel cooler, etc.) due to obstacles or stones in particular,
- driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip,
- crossing a stream.

Seat belts

Front seat belts

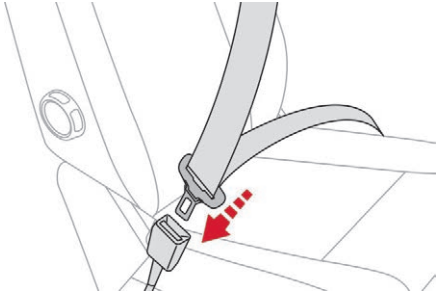


The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system.

This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.

The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.
The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

Locking

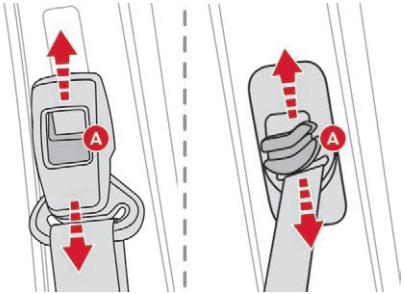


- Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- Press the red button on the buckle.
- Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

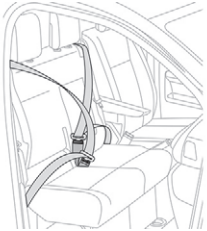
Height adjustment



- To lower the attachment point, while moving control **A** downwards, slide the assembly down to the desired position.
- To raise the attachment point, slide the assembly up to the desired position.

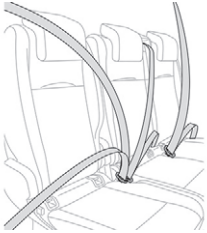
> The upper part of the diagonal strap should lie across the shoulder.

2-seat front bench seat



If your vehicle is fitted with a front bench seat, ensure that each belt is used with its correct buckle.
Do not interchange the driver's seat belt or buckle with the centre seat belt or buckle.

Rear seat belts



A 3-seat bench seat (one-piece or split with 1/3 seat and 2/3 bench seat) is fitted with three-point seat belts and inertia reels on the outer seats.
The centre seat has a seat belt guide and inertia reel, built into the seat backrest.
The seat belt reels for the outer seats in row 2 have force limiters.
The seats in row 3 have three-point seat belts with inertia reels.

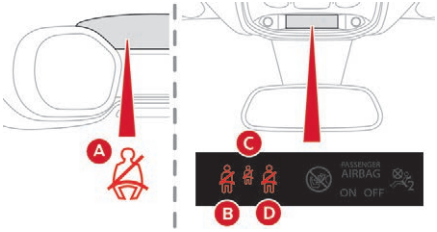
For rows 2 and 3, be sure to fit each seat belt to its correct buckle.
Do not interchange the belts or buckles for the outer seats with the belt or buckle for the centre seat.
When folding the side seats or placing the backrests in the table position, avoid trapping the belt for the centre seat.
After folding or moving a rear seat or bench seat, ensure that the seat belt has reeled in correctly and that the buckle is ready to receive its tongue.
When handling the outer seats (removing or refitting) or for access to row 3, avoid trapping the centre belt.

With individual seats

Shine, **Business Lounge**

They have three-point seat belts with their guides and belt inertia reels built into the backrests.

Seat belt(s) warning lamp(s)



A. Front seat belts not fastened/unfastened warning lamp.

B. Left-hand seat belt not fastened/ unfastened warning lamp.

C. Central seat belt unfastened warning lamp (if your vehicle is fitted with a 2-seat front bench seat).

D. Right-hand seat belt not fastened/ unfastened warning lamp (if your vehicle is fitted with individual front seats).
Right-hand seat belt unfastened warning lamp (if your vehicle is fitted with a 2-seat front bench seat).

On switching on the ignition, the warning lamp(s) comes on if the corresponding seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp(s) flashes for two minutes, accompanied by an audible signal. Beyond these two minutes, the warning lamp(s) remains on if the driver or front passenger do not fasten their seat belt(s).

Advice

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.
Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.
Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.
The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.
Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.
The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
The inertia reels have an automatic locking device at the time of a collision, during sudden braking or if the vehicle turns over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

Advice

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:
- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not show any signs of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.
Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Instructions for children
Use a suitable child seat, if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.
Never allow a child to travel on your lap.
For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

In case of impact
Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pyrotechnic system may be deployed before and independent of the airbags.
Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp is lit.
After an impact, get the seat belt system checked and if necessary have it replaced by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

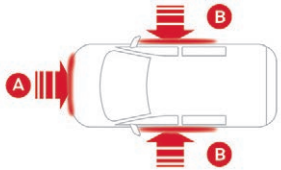
Airbags

System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the centre seat in rows 2 and 3, if fitted to your vehicle) in the event of violent collisions.
The airbags supplement the action of the force-limiting seat belts.
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the event of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants (with the exception of the centre seat in rows 2 and 3, if fitted to your vehicle) ; immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not be deployed ; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.
This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

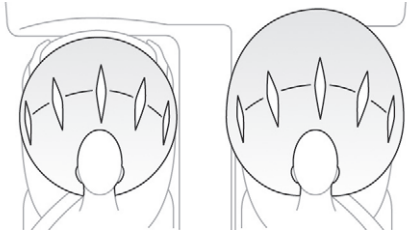
Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

The deployment of one or more airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system.
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience some irritation.
The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

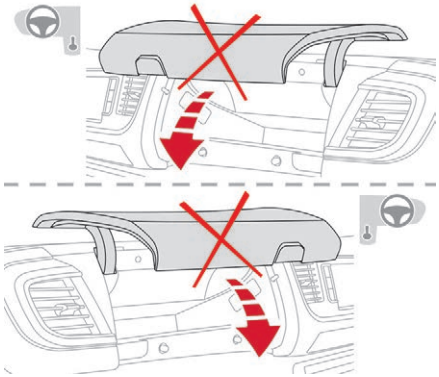
Front airbags



System which protects the driver and passenger(s) in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel ; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

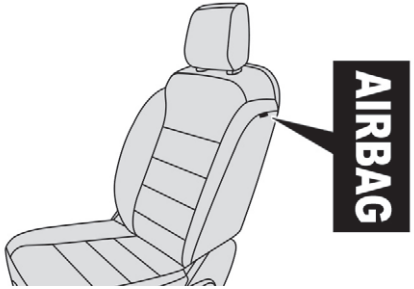
Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the frontal impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.
The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger side to cushion their forward movement.



! **When driving**, keep the glove box closed. Otherwise, this could cause injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Lateral airbags



If fitted to your vehicle, this is a system that protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the abdomen and head.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The lateral airbag inflates between the front occupant's abdomen and head and the associated door trim panel.

Curtain airbags (row 2 and 3)

Feel, **Shine**, **Business Lounge**

If fitted to your vehicle, this is a system that contributes towards greater protection for the passengers (with the exception of the centre seats) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

They are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The curtain airbag inflates between the outer rear passenger and the windows.

Malfunction

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

Advice

! **For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.**
Adopt a normal upright sitting position.
Fasten the seat belt ensuring it is correctly positioned and adjusted.
Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object, etc.), nor fix or attach anything close to or in the way of the airbag release trajectory ; this could cause injuries during their deployment.
Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.
All work on the airbag systems must only be performed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms cannot be ruled out when an airbag is deployed.
The airbag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

! **Front airbags**
Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, as this could cause injuries when the airbags are deployed.

Lateral airbags
Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment of the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (clothes, etc.), as this could cause injuries to the thorax or arm when the lateral airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.
The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.
A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!
Such work must only be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Curtain airbags

Feel, **Shine**, **Business Lounge**

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.
Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, as they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

General points relating to child seats

The legislation on carrying children is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:
- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
- **A child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearward facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

It is recommended that children travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:
- **"rearward facing"** up to the age of 3,
- **"forward facing"** over the age of 3.

Ensure that the seat belt is positioned and tightened correctly.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.
At the front: if necessary, adjust the passenger seat.
At the rear: if necessary, adjust the relevant front seat.

Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Advice

! An incorrectly installed child seat compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the harness of child seats, keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of the vehicle. If the passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.
Remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

! **Installing a booster seat**
The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
Use a booster seat with backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

! **Additional protections**
To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.
As a safety precaution, do not leave:
- a child alone and unattended in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Child seat at the front

☞ Adjust the passenger seat to the **highest** and **fully back longitudinal position**, **with the backrest straightened**.

"Forward facing"

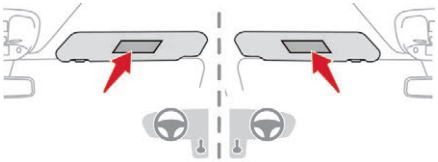
! You must leave the front passenger airbag active.

"Rearward facing"

! The front passenger airbag must be deactivated before installing a rearward facing child seat. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag deploys**.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

Warning label - Front passenger airbag



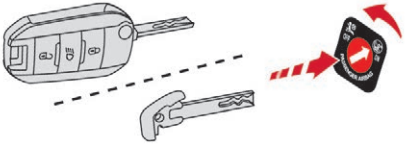
You must comply with the following instruction, repeated by the warning label on both sides of the passenger sun visor:

NEVER install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an ACTIVATED FRONT AIRBAG. This could cause the DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY of the CHILD .

Deactivating/reactivating the front passenger airbag

Only the front passenger airbag can be deactivated.

The control is located in the glove box.



With the ignition off:

- ☞ To deactivate, turn the control to the "**OFF**" position.
- ☞ To reactivate, turn the control to the "**ON**" position.

When the ignition is switched on:

This indicator lamp comes on and remains lit to signal the deactivation.

Or

This indicator lamp comes on for about a minute to signal the activation.

! To guarantee the safety of your child, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated when you install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.
Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Child seat at the rear

Row 2

"Forward facing" or "Rearward facing"

- ☞ Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the "forward facing" child seat or the "rearward facing" child seat itself do not touch the vehicle's front seat.
- ☞ Verify that the backrest of the "forward facing" child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's rear seat, and is ideally in contact with it.
- ☞ Adjust the rear seat to the fully back longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened.

> **i** Make sure that the seat belt is correctly tightened.
> For child seats with a support leg, make sure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.

Row 3

If the vehicle is so equipped, when a child seat is installed on a passenger seat in the 3rd row, move the seats in the 2nd row forward and straighten the backrests so that the child seat or the legs of the child do not touch the seats in the 2nd row.

Recommended child seats

Range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

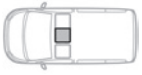
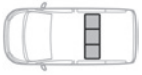
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg
L1 "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" Installed in the rearward facing position.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg
L5 "RÖMER KIDFIX XP" Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt. Is only installed on the outer rear seats. The head restraint on the vehicle seat must be removed.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg
L6 "GRACO Booster" The child is restrained by the seat belt. Is only installed on the front passenger seat or on the outer rear seats.

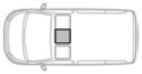
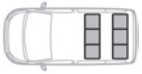
Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

Pursuant to European legislation, the table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using a seat belt and universally approved (a) for the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat positions		Weight of the child and indicative age			
		Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Cab/Row 1 (c) (f)					
	Individual seat, passenger seat	**U**			
	Bench seat, outer seat	**U**			
	Bench seat, centre seat	**X**			
Row 2 (d) (Fixed bench seat)*					
	Rear seats	**U**			

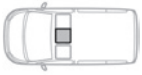
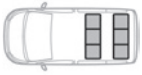
* The folding bench seat is in the process of being approved.

Combi

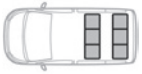
Seat positions		Weight of the child and indicative age			
		Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Row 1 (c)					
	Individual seat, passenger seat with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**"	**U**			
	Individual seat, passenger seat with passenger airbag activated "**ON**"	**X**	**UF**		
	Bench seat, centrel seat with passenger airbag deactivated"**OFF**" or activated "**ON**"	**X**			
	Bench seat, outer seat with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**"	**U**			
	Bench seat, outer seat with passenger airbag activated "**ON**"	**X**	**UF**		
Row 2 and 3					
	Rear seats	**U**			

5

Business

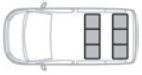
Seat positions		Weight of the child and indicative age			
		Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Row 1 (c)					
	Individual seat, passenger seat with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**"	**U**			
	Individual seat, passenger seat with passenger airbag activated "**ON**"	**X**	**UF**		
	Bench seat, centre seat with passenger airbag deactivated"**OFF**" or activated "**ON**"	**X**			
	Bench seat, outer seat with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**"	**U**			
	Bench seat, outer seat with passenger airbag activated "**ON**"	**X**	**UF**		
Row 2 and 3					
	Rear seats	**U**			

Feel

Seat positions		Weight of the child and indicative age			
		Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Row 1 (c)					
	Passenger seat (electrically adjusted) with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**"	**U**			
	Passenger seat (electrically adjusted) with passenger airbag activated "**ON**"	**X**	**UF**		
	Passenger seat (without height adjustment) with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**"	**U**			
	Passenger seat (without height adjustment) with passenger airbag activated "**ON**"	**X**	**UF**		
Row 2 (d) and 3 (d)					
	Rear seats	**U**			

5

Shine, **Business Lounge**

Seat positions		Weight of the child and indicative age			
		Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Row 1 (c)					
	Passenger seat (electrically adjusted) with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**"	**U**			
	Passenger seat (electrically adjusted) with passenger airbag activated "**ON**"	**X**	**UF**		
Row 2 (d) and 3 (d)					
	Outer and central seats (e)	**U**			

(a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and "car" infant carriers cannot be installed on the front passenger seat(s) or the seats in row 3.

(c) Refer to the current legislation in the country where you are driving, before installing a child at this seat position.

(d) To install a child seat at the rear, forward facing or rearward facing, move the seats in front forward, then straighten their backrests to allow sufficient room for the child seat and the child's legs.

(e) The seat can be installed centrally in the vehicle ; it then prevents the use of the outer seats.

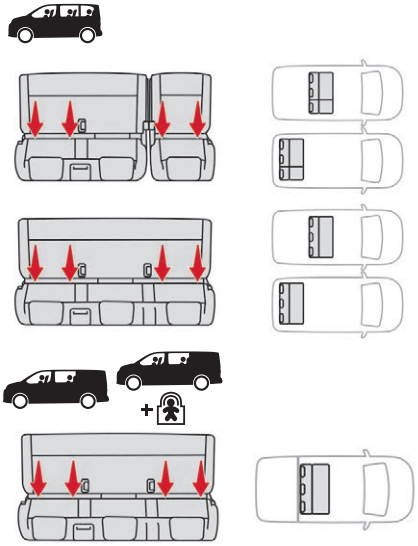
(f) When a “rearward facing” child seat is installed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

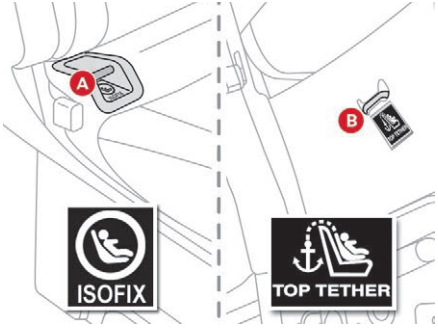
U Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing".

UF Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved "forward facing".

X Seat position not suitable for the installation of a child seat of the weight class indicated.

"ISOFIX" mountings





The vehicle has been approved in accordance with the latest ISOFIX regulation.
If fitted to the vehicle, the ISOFIX regulation mountings are identified by labels.
The mountings comprise three rings for each seat:

- Two front rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion, indicated by an "ISOFIX" marking,
- If fitted to your vehicle, a rear ring **B** called the Top Tether and located behind the vehicle's seat, for securing the upper strap, as indicated by a "Top Tether" marking.

The Top Tether is used to secure the upper strap of child seats that have one. This system prevents the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a front impact.
This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

The ISOFIX child seats are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two front rings **A**.
Some child seats also have an upper strap which is attached to rear ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the Top Tether:

- remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on this seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- run the strap of the child seat behind the top of the seat backrest, centring it between the holes for the head restraint rods,
- attach the hook of the upper strap to rear ring **B**,
- tighten the upper strap.

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident. Strictly follow the fitting instructions provided in the installation guide supplied with the child seat.

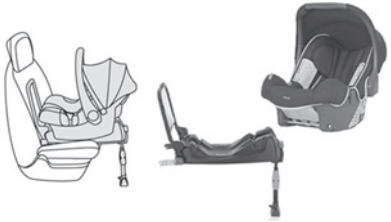
i For information on the possibilities for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

Recommended ISOFIX child seats

Also consult the user guides from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base"
(size category: **E**)

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**.
The base has a support leg, height-adjustable, which rests on the vehicle's floor.
This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

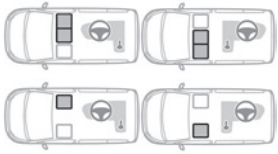
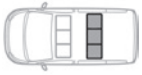
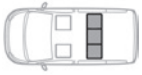
"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX"
(size category: **B1**)

Group 1: from 9 to 18kg

Installed only in the forward facing position.
Is attached to rings **A** and ring **B**, referred to as TOP TETHER, using an upper strap.
Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down.
This child seat can also be used on seats not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the position of the vehicle's front seat so that the child's feet are not touching the backrest.

Locations for ISOFIX child seats

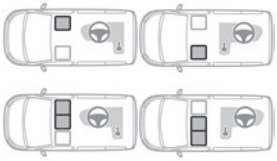
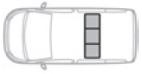
In accordance with European regulations, the table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on the vehicle seats fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

		Weight of the child/indicative age									
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**9 - 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Carrycot**		rearward facing			rearward facing		forward facing		
ISOFIX size category		**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Row 1											
	Individual passenger seat or 2-seat bench seat with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**" or activated "**ON**"	**Not ISOFIX**									
Row 2 with 2-seat bench seat in row 1 (fixed bench seat)*											
	Outer seats	**X**							**IUF**		
	Centre seat	**Not ISOFIX**									
Row 2 with individual seats in row 1 (fixed bench seat)*											
	Outer seats	**IL**		**IL** (6)	**IL**		**IL** (6)	**IL**	**IUF**		
	Centre seat	**Not ISOFIX**									

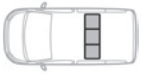
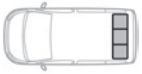
* The folding bench seat is in the process of being approved

5

Combi

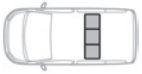
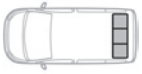
		Weight of the child/indicative age									
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**9 - 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Carrycot** (1)		rearward facing			rearward facing		forward facing		
ISOFIX size category		**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Row 1 (a)											
	Individual passenger seat or 2-seat bench seat with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**" or activated "**ON**"	**Not ISOFIX**									
Row 2											
	Outer and centre seats (b)	**X**	**IL** (3)	**IL** (2)		**IL**	**IL** (2)		**IUF, IL**		
Row 3											
	Fixed rear seat and bench seat, outer and centre seats (b)	**X**							**IUF, IL**		
	Fixed one-piece bench seat, outer and centre seats (b)	**X**									

Business

		Weight of the child/indicative age									
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**9 - 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Carrycot** (1)		rearward facing			rearward facing		forward facing		
ISOFIX size category		**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Row 1 (a)											
	Individual passenger seat or 2-seat bench seat with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**" or activated "**ON**"	**Not ISOFIX**									
Row 2											
	Rear seats	**X**	**IL** (1-3)	**IL** (2)		**IL**	**IL** (2)		**IUF, IL**		
Row 3											
	Fixed rear seat and bench seat, rear seats	**X**							**IUF, IL**		
	Fixed one-piece bench seat, rear seats	**X**									

5

Feel

		Weight of the child/indicative age									
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Carrycot** (1)		rearward facing			rearward facing		forward facing		
ISOFIX size category		**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Row 1 (a)											
	Passenger seat with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**" or activated "**ON**"	**Not ISOFIX**									
Row 2											
	Rear seats	**IL**							**IUF, IL**		
Row 3											
	Rear seats	**IL** (1-4)		**X**	**IL** (4)		**X**	**IL** (4)	**IUF, IL**		

Shine, Business Lounge

		Weight of the child/indicative age									
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**9 - 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Carrycot** (1)		**rearward facing**			**rearward facing**		**forward facing**		
ISOFIX size category		**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Row 1 (a)											
	Passenger seat with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**" or activated "**ON**"	**Not ISOFIX**									
Row 2											
	Seat behind driver or passenger	**X**		**IL**(5)	**IL**		**IL**(5)	**IL**	**IUF, IL**		
	Centre seat (b)	**X**		**IL**(5)	**IL**		**IL**(5)	**IL**	**IUF, IL**		
	Rear seats	**IL** (1-5)		**IL**			**IL**		**IUF, IL**		
Row 3											
	Outer seats	**X**		**IL** (4)		**IL**	**IL** (4)		**IUF, IL**		
	Centre seat (b)	**X**		**IL** (4)		**IL**	**IL** (4)		**IUF, IL**		
	Rear seats	**IL** (1-4)		**X**	**IL** (4)		**X**	**IL** (4)	**IUF, IL**		

5

(a) Refer to the current legislation in the country where you are driving, before installing a child at this seat position.

(b) The seat can be installed centrally in the vehicle ; it then prevents the use of the outer seats.

IUF Seat position suitable for installing an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, "**F**orward facing", secured using the upper strap.

IL Seat position suitable for installing an **I**sofix semi-universa**L** child seat which can be:
- "rearward facing" fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
- a carrycot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

> For securing the upper strap using the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

X Seat position unsuitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat or carrycot of the weight group indicated.

(1) The installation of a carrycot on this seat may prevent the use of one or more of the other seats in this row.

(2) Installation possible only behind the driver's seat.

(3) Installation possible only behind the driver's seat with individual passenger seat.

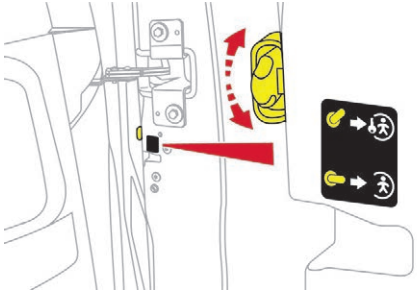
(4) The seat in row 2 must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the child in row 3 and the seat immediately in front.

(5) The front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the child in row 2 and the seat immediately in front.

(6) The front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the child in row 2 and the seat immediately in front (with the front seat adjusted to 2 notches ahead of the centre of the runner).

Manual child lock

Mechanical system to prevent opening of the sliding side door using its interior lever.



Locking/Unlocking

☞ Turn the control located on the edge of the side door **upwards** to **lock** it or **downwards** to **unlock** it.

Electric child lock

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors (sliding side door(s), side-hinged doors or tailgate (depending on version)) using their interior controls.

Activation/Deactivation

With the ignition on:

☞ Press this button ; its indicator remains on for as long as the child lock is activated. A message confirms the activation.
It is still possible to open the doors from the outside.

☞ Press this button again ; its indicator remains off for as long as the child lock is deactivated. A message confirms the deactivation.

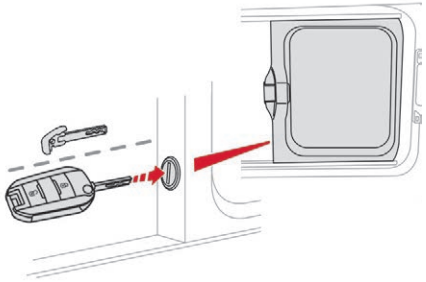
ℹ In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is deactivated (child lock off) automatically.

! Any other state of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.
Do not drive with the sliding side door open.
Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.
Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Child lock on rear windows

This mechanical system prevents opening of the left and/or right rear side windows.



☞ Lock/unlock the system using the remote control key or the back-up key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

Driving recommendations

- ☞ Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
- ☞ Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.
- ☞ Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
- ☞ Stop the vehicle to carry out operations that require close attention (such as adjustments).
- ☞ During long trips, take a break every two hours.

To assure the durability of your vehicle and for safety reasons, remember that certain precautions, described hereafter, should be taken when driving your vehicle:

Manoeuvre cautiously, at low speed

The dimensions of this vehicle differ greatly from those of a light vehicle, in width, in height, as well as in length, and some obstacles will be more difficult to notice.
Manoeuvre slowly.
Before turning, check that there are no obstacles at mid-height along the sides.
Before reversing, check that there are no obstacles, particularly at high level behind the vehicle.
Be aware of the external dimensions, if ladders are fitted.

Drive the vehicle in a cautious and efficient way

Take corners gently.
Anticipate the need to brake as the stopping distance is increased, particularly on wet or icy roads.
Be aware of the effect of side winds on the vehicle.

Be careful

The tyres must be inflated to at least the pressures indicated on the label, even over-inflated by 0.2 to 0.3 bar for long journeys.

Important!

! **Never leave the engine running in a closed space without sufficient ventilation.** Internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

! In severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), let the engine run for 4 minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox).

! **Never drive with the parking brake applied**. Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!

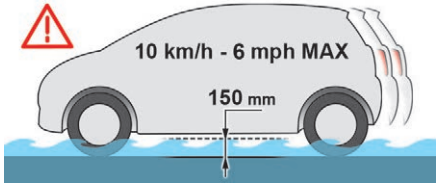
! **Do not park the vehicle or leave the engine running on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, etc.).** The exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

! **Never leave a vehicle unattended with the engine running.** If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P** (depending on the type of gearbox).

! **Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised**.

On flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.



If you are obliged to drive on a flooded road:
- ☞ check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- ☞ deactivate the Stop & Start function,
- ☞ drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- ☞ do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In case of towing

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and requires extra care from the driver.

ℹ Respect the maximum towable weights.
At altitude: reduce the maximum load by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude ; the density of the air decreases with altitude and the performance of the engine reduces.

! **New vehicle:** do not pull a trailer before having driven at least 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

ℹ If the outside temperature is high, let the engine idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to help it to cool.

Before setting off

Nose weight

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight (at the point where it joins your vehicle) approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

ℹ If a genuine CITROËN towing device is used, the rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal.

When driving

Cooling

Towing a trailer uphill increases the temperature of the coolant. The maximum towable load depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature. The cooling capacity of the fan does not increase with engine speed.
- ☞ To reduce the heating up, reduce the vehicle speed and the engine speed.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.

If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Brakes

Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Side wind

Bear in mind the increased sensitivity to wind that your vehicle will have.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic immobiliser

The remote control contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.
A few seconds after switching off the ignition, this system locks the engine control system, therefore preventing the engine from being started in the event of a break-in.

In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message on the screen.

The vehicle will not start ; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

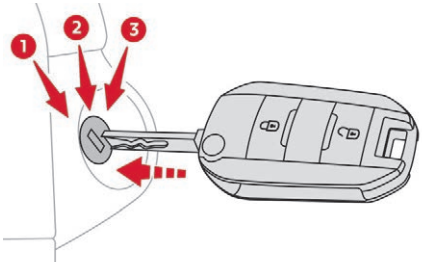
Starting/switching off the engine

Starting

The parking brake must be applied.

- With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in the neutral position, fully depress the clutch pedal and keep the pedal down until the engine starts.
- With an **automatic gearbox**, place the selector in position **P** then fully depress the brake pedal.
- With an **electronic gearbox**, place the selector in position **N** then fully depress the brake pedal.

With the conventional key/With the remote control key



1. **Stop** position.
2. **Ignition on** position.
3. **Starting** position.

- Insert the key into the ignition switch. The system recognises the starting code.
- Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering wheel and the key.

> In certain circumstances, a significant effort may be required to turn the steering wheel (if the wheels are against a kerb, for example).

- Turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine preheating system.

- Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel, then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine starts, release the key.

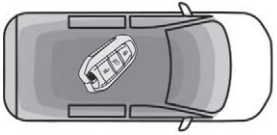
The warning lamp does not come on if the engine is already hot.In certain climatic conditions, it is advised to follow the recommendations below:

- In mild conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.
- In wintry conditions, the preheater warning lamp will stay on for a longer period after switching on the ignition ; wait until it goes off before starting.
- In **very severe wintry conditions** (temperature below -23°C), to ensure correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of the vehicle (engine and gearbox), **leave the engine running for 4 minutes** before starting the vehicle.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the ignition.
Wait a few seconds before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: risk of damaging the starter motor and the engine.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

With Keyless Entry and Starting



☞ Place the remote control inside the vehicle, in the recognition zone.

☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button.

The steering column unlocks and the engine starts more or less instantly.

The warning lamp does not come on if the engine is already warm. In some climatic conditions, it is advised to follow the recommendations below:

- In mild conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.
- In wintry conditions, the pre-heater warning lamp will stay on for a longer period after switching on the ignition ; wait until it goes off before starting.
- In **very severe wintry conditions** (temperature below -23°C), to ensure correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox), **leave the engine running for 4 minutes** before moving off.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

For **Diesel vehicles**, in sub-zero temperatures, the engine will not start until the pre-heater warning lamp has gone off.
If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "START/STOP" button, press down on the brake or clutch pedal until the warning lamp goes off, without pressing the "START/STOP" button again, until the engine starts and runs.

The presence of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system remote control in the recognition zone is essential.
Never leave the vehicle with the engine running and with the remote control on your person.
If the remote control leaves the recognition zone, a message is displayed. Move the remote control into the zone in order to be able to start the engine.

If one of the starting conditions is not met, a message is displayed in the instrument panel. In some circumstances, it is required to turn the steering wheel slightly while pressing the "START/STOP" button to assist unlocking of the steering column ; a message warns you when this is needed.

Switching off

With the conventional key/With the remote control key

- Immobilise the vehicle.
- Turn the key all the way to position **1 (Stop)** and remove it from the ignition.
- To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

- Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

Never switch off the ignition before the complete immobilisation of the vehicle. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also turned off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle without taking the remote control with you, even for a short time.

Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Key left in the ignition

When opening the driver's door, an alert message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, to remind you that the key is still in the ignition switch at position **1 (Stop)**.
If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.
To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

With Keyless Entry and Starting

☞ Immobilise the vehicle.

☞ With the remote control in the recognition zone, press the "**START/STOP**" button.

The engine stops and the steering column locks.

ℹ If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle ; these fixings must be used,
- never place one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter.
The mats approved by CITROËN have two fixings located below the seat.

Special case with Keyless Entry and Starting

Switching the ignition on without starting

With the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key inside the vehicle, pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, **without pressing any of the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on.

☞ Press this button **again** to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

Back-up starting

Should your vehicle not detect the electronic key in the recognition zone, because the remote control battery is flat, a back-up reader is provided to the left behind the steering wheel, to allow starting.

☞ Place and hold the remote control against the reader, then:

☞ With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in the neutral position, fully depress the clutch pedal and keep the pedal down until the engine starts.

☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, place the selector in position **P** then fully depress the brake pedal.

☞ With an **electronic gearbox**, place the selector in position **N** then fully depress the brake pedal.

☞ Then press the "**START/STOP**" button.
The engine starts.

Remote control not recognised

If the remote control is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.

☞ To confirm switching off the engine, press and hold the "**START/STOP**" button for about 3 seconds, then contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Forced switch-off

In the event of an emergency only and with the vehicle stationary, you can switch off the engine.

☞ To do this, press the “**START/STOP**” button for about 3 seconds.

In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

Parking brake

Application

☞ With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise your vehicle.

Release on level ground

☞ With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up gently, press the release button, then lower the lever fully.

When the vehicle is being driven, this warning lamp coming on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicates that the parking brake is still applied or has not been fully released.

! When parking on a slope or on a steep slope with a loaded vehicle, turn the wheels against the kerb then apply the parking brake.

i Pressing the brake pedal facilitates the application and release of the manual parking brake.

! With a manual gearbox, engage a gear then switch off the ignition.

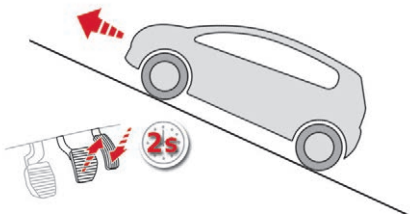
! With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector in position **P** then switch off the ignition.

! With an electronic gearbox, place the gear selector in position **A** then switch off the ignition.

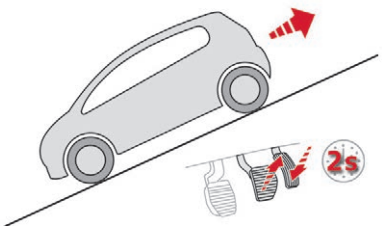
Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.
It is only active when:
- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- certain slope conditions are met,
- the driver's door is closed.

! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist.
If you need to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp lights up fixed on the instrument panel.



Uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.
With a **manual gearbox**, if you are in first gear or in neutral.
With an **automatic gearbox**, if you are in position **D** or **M**.
With an **electronic gearbox**, if you are in automatic mode (position **A**) or in manual mode (position **M**).



Downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.

! If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox and you have to move off on a steep slope (uphill or downhill) with a loaded vehicle, **press the brake pedal**, select position **D**, release the parking brake then release the brake pedal.

Operating fault

If a fault in the system occurs, this warning lamp comes on associated with a message. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked as soon as possible.

5-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear

☞ With the clutch pedal fully down, you must place the gear lever in neutral.

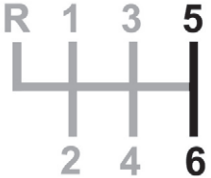
☞ Move the gear lever to the right, then pull it back.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting the engine:
- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

6-speed manual gearbox

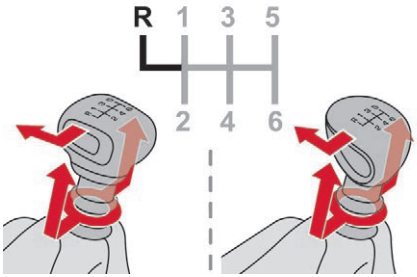
Engaging 5th or 6th gear



☞ Move the gear selector fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to follow this instruction could cause permanent damage to the gearbox (inadvertent engagement of 3rd or 4th gear).

Engaging reverse gear



☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting the engine:
- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

Gear efficiency indicator

(Depending on engine.)

This system helps reduce fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and the vehicle's equipment, the system may advise skipping one or more gears.
Gear engagement recommendations are only optional. In fact, the configuration of the road, the traffic density and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the system's advice.
This function cannot be deactivated.

On certain BlueHDi Diesel versions with manual gearbox, the system may suggest changing into neutral (**N** is displayed in the instrument panel) so that the engine can go into standby (STOP mode of Stop & Start), in certain driving conditions.

i With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual operation.

The information appears in the instrument panel, in the form of an ascending or descending arrow and the recommended gear.

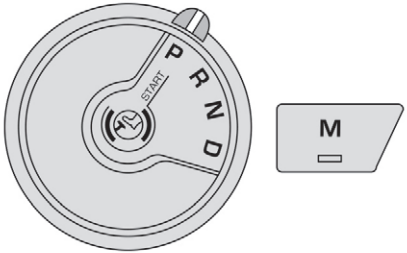
i The system adapts its gear shift recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the driver's requirements (power, acceleration, braking, etc.).
The system never suggests:
- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse.

Automatic gearbox

Automatic gearbox with 6 or 8 speeds, with electronic management of gear changes. It also offers a manual mode with sequential gear changes via control paddles situated behind the steering wheel.

Gear selector

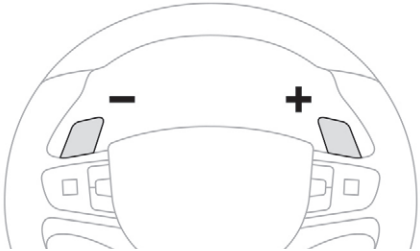
! To safely operate the gear selector, it is recommended that you keep your foot on the brake pedal.



P. Park.
R. Reverse.
N. Neutral.
D. Drive (automatic operation).
M. Manual (manual operation with sequential changing of gears).

i Position **N** can be used in traffic jams or in an automatic car wash tunnel.

Steering mounted controls



☞ Pull the right-hand "**+**" or left-hand "**-**" control paddle towards you to change up or down.

i The steering mounted controls do not allow neutral to be selected and reverse gear to be engaged or disengaged.

Displays in the instrument panel

When the selector is moved or button **M** is pressed, the indicator lamp and the corresponding gear are displayed in the instrument panel.

When "**-**" is displayed, the value is invalid.

☞ If the message "**Foot on the brake**" is displayed in the instrument panel, press the brake pedal firmly.

Moving off

☞ With your foot on the brake, select position **P**.

☞ Start the engine.
If the conditions are not met, there is an audible signal, accompanied by a message on the instrument panel screen.
☞ Release the parking brake.
☞ Select position **R**, **N** or **D**.

! When moving off on a steep slope with a loaded vehicle, **press the brake pedal**, select position **D**, release the parking brake, then release the brake pedal.

☞ Gradually release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

If **P** is displayed on the instrument panel but the selector is in another position, place the selector in position **P** to allow the engine to be started.
If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** to accelerate.

When the engine is running at idle with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.
Never leave children unsupervised inside the vehicle.
As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle without taking your key or remote control with you, even for a short time.
When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

With an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Automatic operation

D

☞ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the driving style, the road profile and the load in the vehicle.

For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.

When braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.
If the accelerator pedal is sharply released, the gearbox will not shift to a higher gear for safety reasons.

Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Temporary manual control of gear changes

It is possible to temporarily take control of gear changes using the "**+**" and "**-**" steering mounted controls. The gear change instruction is acted on if the engine speed permits.
This function allows certain situations to be anticipated, such as overtaking a vehicle or approaching a bend.
After a few moments with no action on the controls, the gearbox returns to automatic operation.

Self-sufficient traction (moving without using the accelerator)

This function facilitates manoeuvring of the vehicle at low speed (when parking, in traffic jams, etc.).
With the engine at idle, parking brake released and position **D**, **M** or **R** selected, the **vehicle moves** as soon as you take your foot off the brake pedal (even without pressing the accelerator).

! As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle with the engine running and the doors closed.

Manual operation

☞ With the selector in position **D**, press button **M** for **sequential** changing of the 6 or 8 gears.

The indicator lamp for the button comes on.

☞ Operate the "**+**" or "**-**" steering mounted controls.

M appears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel.

☞ It is possible to return to automatic operation at any time by pressing button **M** again.

The indicator lamp for the button goes off.

i In manual mode, it is not necessary to release the accelerator pedal when changing gear.

i It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.

i If the engine speed is too low or too high, the selected gear flashes for a few seconds, then the gear actually activated is displayed.
When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.

i To save the brakes when descending a steep incline, use engine braking to reduce your speed (change down to a lower gear).
Keeping the brake pedal pressed continuously for long periods can overheat the brakes, with the risk of damaging the braking system or making it inoperative.
Only use the brakes when necessary, to slow or stop the vehicle.

i Depending on the road configuration (e.g. mountainous road), manual operation is preferable.
This is because automatic operation may not be best suited, not allowing the use of engine braking.

Invalid value during manual operation

This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (gear selector between two positions).

☞ Place the selector "correctly" at a position.

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, select position **P** then apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

i A point of resistance may be noticed when moving to position **P**.
If the selector is not in position **P** when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, an audible signal sounds and a message appears.

☞ Return the gear selector to position **P** ; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

! On a steep slope with a loaded vehicle, **press the brake pedal**, select position **P**, apply the parking brake then release the brake pedal.

! In all circumstances, ensure that the selector is in position **P** before leaving your vehicle.

Operating fault

When the ignition is on, a message appears in the instrument panel screen to indicate a gearbox fault.
In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R.** This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.
Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! There is a risk of damage to the gearbox:
- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time (braking or acceleration must be done only with the right foot),
- if you force the selector from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.

To reduce fuel consumption when stationary for long periods with the engine running (traffic jam, etc.), position the selector on **N** and apply the parking brake.

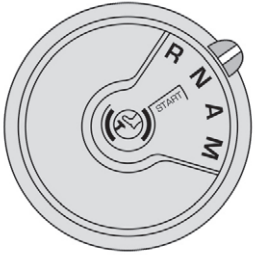
! If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, do not try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Electronic gearbox

Electronic gearbox with 6 speeds, with electronic management of gear changes. It also offers a manual mode with sequential gear changes via control paddles situated behind the steering wheel.

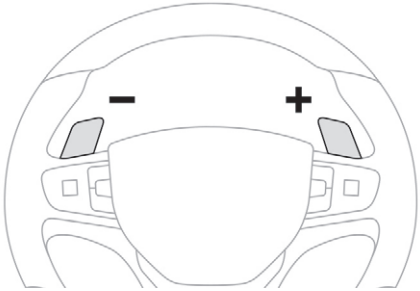
Gear selector

! To safely operate the gear selector, it is recommended that you keep your foot on the brake pedal.



R. Reverse.
N. Neutral.
A. Auto (automatic operation).
M. Manual (manual operation with sequential changing of gears).

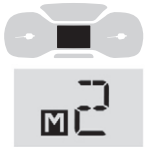
Steering mounted controls



☞ Pull the right-hand "**+**" or left-hand "**-**" control paddle towards you to change up or down.

The steering mounted controls do not allow neutral to be selected and reverse gear to be engaged or disengaged.

Displays in the instrument panel



When the selector is moved, the indicator lamp and the corresponding gear are displayed in the instrument panel.
When "**-**" is displayed, the value is invalid.

Starting the vehicle

- ☞ Select position **N**.
- ☞ Full depress the brake pedal.
- ☞ Start the engine.

N appears in the instrument panel screen.

> **If the engine does not start:**
> If **N** flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, move the gear selector to position **A** then to position **N**.
>
>
>
> If the **Foot on the brake** warning lamp comes in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a "Foot on the brake" message, press the brake pedal more firmly.

- ☞ Select automatic operation (position **A**), manual operation (position **M**), or reverse (position **R**).
- ☞ Release the parking brake.
- ☞ Progressively take your foot off the brake pedal ; the vehicle then moves off.

Automatic operation

- ☞ After starting the engine, select position **A** for automatic gear changes.

AUTO and the gear engaged are displayed in the instrument panel.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any action needed from the driver. It continuously selects the gear best adapted to the following parameters:
- driving style,
- profile of the road.

>
>
> For optimum acceleration, for example when overtaking another vehicle, press the accelerator pedal fully down.

Temporary manual control of gear changes

It is possible to **temporarily** take control of the gear changes using the "**+**" and "**-**" steering mounted controls. The gear change instruction is acted on if the engine speed permits.
This function allows you to anticipate certain situations, such as overtaking another vehicle or approaching a bend in the road.
After a few moments with no action on the control paddles, the gearbox returns to automatic operation.

Manual operation

- ☞ After starting the engine, select position **M** for **sequential** gear changes.

- ☞ Operate the "**+**" or "**-**" steering mounted controls.

AUTO disappears and the gears engaged are displayed successively in the instrument panel.

> It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit ; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.

i It is not necessary to release the accelerator when changing gear.
When braking or slowing down, the gearbox changes down automatically to allow the vehicle to accelerate in the correct gear.

! On sharp acceleration, the gearbox will not change up unless the driver acts on the steering mounted paddles.
Never select neutral **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Only engage reverse gear **R** when the vehicle is stopped and the brake pedal is pressed.

Reverse gear

To engage reverse gear, the vehicle must be stationary with your foot on the brake pedal.
☞ Select position **R**.
There is an audible signal upon engagement of reverse.

i At low speed, if reverse gear is requested, the **N** indicator lamp flashes and the gearbox goes into neutral automatically.
To engage reverse, with your foot on the brake pedal, move the selector to position **N**, then to position **R**.

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, it is possible to:
- move to position **N** to engage neutral,

or
- leave the vehicle in gear ; in this case, the vehicle cannot be moved.

In both cases, you must apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

! When immobilising the vehicle with the engine running, you must move the selector to neutral **N**.
Before doing anything under the bonnet, ensure that the selector is in neutral **N** and that the parking brake is applied.

Malfunction

With the ignition on, the flashing of **A** or **AUTO**, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicates a malfunction of the gearbox.
Have the vehicle checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! You must keep your foot on the brake pedal while starting the engine.
In all parking situations, you must apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

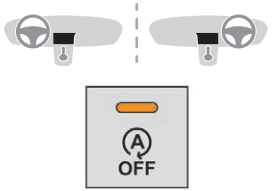
Stop & Start

The Stop & Start function puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during phases when the vehicle is stopped (red lights, queues, etc.). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as the driver wishes to move off again.
Primarily designed for urban use, the function is intended to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.
The function does not affect the functionalities of the vehicle, in particular the braking.

! **Driving on flooded roads**
Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivation/Activation

With / Without audio system



☞ To deactivate or reactivate the system, press this button.

The indicator lamp **is lit** when the system is **deactivated**.

With touch screen

Activation or deactivation is done via the vehicle configuration menu.

! If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

i The system reactivates automatically every time the engine is started by the driver.

Operation

Main conditions for operation

- The driver's door must be closed.
- The sliding side door must be closed.
- The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
- The state of charge of the battery must be sufficient.
- The temperature of the engine must be within its nominal operating range.
- The outside temperature must be between 0°C and 35 °C.

Putting the engine into standby (STOP mode)

The engine automatically goes into standby as soon as the driver indicates the intention of stopping.

With a **manual gearbox**: at a speed below 12 mph (20 km/h) or the vehicle stopped (depending on engine), with the gear lever in neutral and clutch pedal released.
With an **automatic gearbox**: with the brake pedal depressed or the gear selector in position **N**, with the vehicle stopped.
With an **electronic gearbox**: at a speed below 12 mph (20 km/h), with the brake pedal depressed or the gear selector in position **N**, with the vehicle stopped.

Time counter

A time counter adds up the time spent in standby during a journey. It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Special cases:

The engine does not go into standby if one of the operating conditions is not met and in the following cases.

- Steep slope (rising or falling).
- Vehicle speed has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start (with the key or the "**START/STOP**" button).
- Needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Demisting active.

In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

i After the engine has restarted, STOP mode is not available as long as the vehicle has not reached a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h).

i During parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear or turning the steering wheel.

Engine restarting (START mode)

The engine automatically restarts as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again.

With a manual gearbox: with the clutch pedal fully depressed.
With an **automatic gearbox**:
- With the selector in position **D** or **M**: with the brake pedal released.
- With the selector in position **N** and the brake pedal released: with the selector at **D** or **M**.
- With the selector in position **P** and the brake pedal depressed: with the selector at **R**, **N**, **D** or **M**.
- Reverse gear engaged.

With an **electronic gearbox**:
- With the selector in position **A** or **M**: with the brake pedal released.
- With the selector in position **N** and the brake pedal released: with the selector at **A** or **M**.
- Reverse gear engaged.

Special cases

The engine restarts automatically if all the operating conditions are met again and in the following cases.

- With a **manual gearbox**: vehicle speed exceeds 16 mph (25 km/h) or 2 mph (3 km/h) (depending on engine).
- With an **automatic gearbox**: vehicle speed exceeds 2.5 mph (3 km/h).

In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

Malfunctions

Depending on the vehicle's equipment:

In the event of a fault with the system, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel.

The warning lamp in this button flashes and a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

☞ Have the vehicle checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The vehicle stalls in STOP mode

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on if this fault occurs.
Depending on version, a warning message may also be displayed, asking you to place the gear selector in position **N** and to press the brake pedal.
☞
Switch off the ignition then start the engine again with the key or the "**START/STOP**" button.

! The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification.
All work concerning the battery must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Tyre under-inflation detection

This system automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.
It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed**.
The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the inflation pressure of one or more tyres.

Under-inflation detection does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system does not avoid the need to regularly check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel) as well as before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):
- worsens road-holding,
- lengthens braking distances,
- causes premature wear of the tyres,
- increases fuel consumption.

The inflation pressures specified for the vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.
For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Checking tyre pressures
This check should be done when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

Snow chains
The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Spare wheel
The steel spare wheel does not have an under-inflation detection sensor.

Under-inflation alert

This is signalled by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

- Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not rely on just a visual check.

- Using a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold.
- If it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
- In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

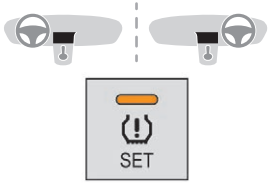
The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

Reinitialise the system after adjusting one or more tyre pressures and after changing one or more wheels.

Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the values written on the tyre pressure label.
Check the pressures of the four tyres before performing the reinitialisation.
The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

Without audio system



☞ Press this button for about 3 seconds then release it, an audible signal confirms the reinitialisation.

With audio system or touch screen

The reinitialisation is carried out via the vehicle configuration menu.

Malfunction

The illumination of these warning lamps indicates a fault with the system.
In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured.
Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations

Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climactic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.
It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the relative distances and speeds of other vehicles and to anticipate their movements before indicating and changing lane.
The systems cannot exceed the limits of the laws of physics.

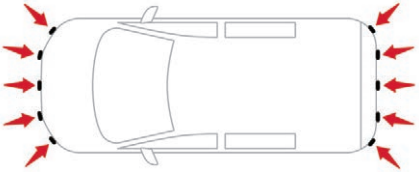
Driving aids
You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the interior and exterior rear view mirrors, always keep the feet close to the pedals and take a break every two hours.

Manoeuvring aids
The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.

Radar
The operation of the radar as well as the associated functions may be impaired through the accumulation of dirt (mud, frost, etc.), in certain difficult weather conditions (very heavy rain, snow) or if the bumper is damaged.
If the front bumper is to be repainted, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop ; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar.

Driving aids camera
This camera and its associated functions may be impaired if the windscreen area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.
On versions with camera alone, this message indicates to you that the camera is obstructed: "**Driving aids camera: Visibility limited, see user guide**".
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.

Other cameras
The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the relief.
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.



Sensors
The operation of the sensors, as well as the associated functions, may be disturbed by sound interference such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.
When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.
A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.
The sensors do not always detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences).
Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

Maintenance
Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly.
When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.

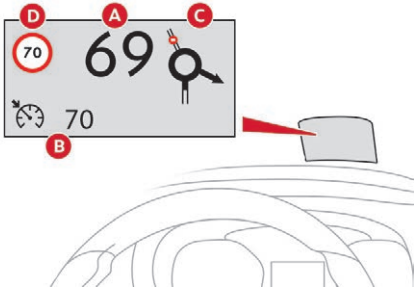
Mats
The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

Units of speed
Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in.
If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally.
In case of doubt, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Head-up display

System which projects various information onto a smoked blade in the driver's field of vision so that they do not have to take their eyes off the road.

Displays during operation

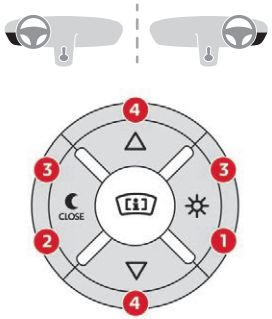


Once the system has been activated, the following information is grouped together in the head-up display:

A. The speed of your vehicle.
B. Cruise control/speed limiter information.
C. If your vehicle is so equipped, inter-vehicle distance information, automatic emergency braking alerts and navigation instructions.
D. If your vehicle is so equipped, speed limit information.

For more information on **Navigation**, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section.

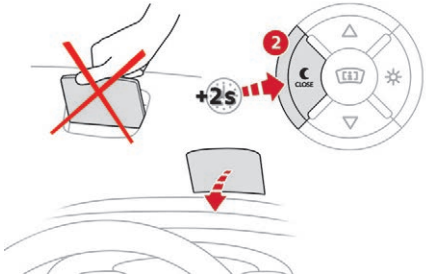
Buttons



1. On.
2. Off (long press).
3. Brightness adjustment.
4. Display height adjustment.

Activation/Deactivation

- With the engine running, press button **1** to activate the system and deploy the blade.



☞ Press and hold button **2** to deactivate the system and retract the blade.

The activated/deactivated state is saved and restored on restarting the engine.

Height adjustment

☞ With the engine running, adjust the display to the desired height using buttons **4**:
- up to move the display up,
- down to move the display down.

Brightness adjustment

☞ With the engine running, adjust the brightness of the information display using button **3**:
- the "sun" to increase the brightness,
- the "moon" to decrease the brightness.

! When stationary or while driving, no objects should be placed around the blade (or in its recess) so as to not impede deployment of the blade and its correct operation.

i In certain extreme weather conditions (rain and/or snow, bright sunshine, etc.) the head-up display may not be legible or may suffer temporary interference.
Some sunglasses may hamper reading of the information.
To clean the blade, use a clean, soft cloth (such as a spectacles cloth or microfibre cloth). Do not use a dry or abrasive cloth or detergent or solvent products as these could scratch the blade or damage the anti-reflection coating.

i This system operates when the engine is running, and the settings are stored when the ignition is switched off.

Memorising speeds

This function allows speed settings to be stored that will then be offered for configuration of two systems: speed limiter or cruise control.

You can memorise up to six speed settings for each system.

Programming

The speed thresholds can be set in the vehicle configuration menu using the touch screen.

☞ Select the system for which you want to memorise new speed settings:

- speed limiter

or

- cruise control.

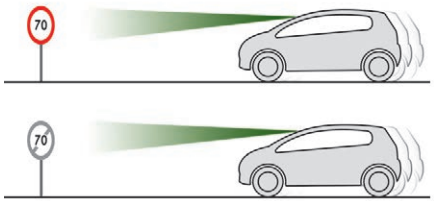
☞ Press the button corresponding to the speed setting you want to change.

☞ Enter the new value using the numerical keypad and confirm.
☞ Confirm to record the changes and quit the menu.

MEM	Memorised speeds are recalled by pressing this button.

Speed Limit recognition and recommendation

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system displays the maximum authorised speed in the instrument panel, according to the speed limits in the country in which you are driving, using:
- Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
- Speed limit details from the navigation system mapping.

! You should update your navigation mapping regularly in order to receive accurate speed limit information from the system.

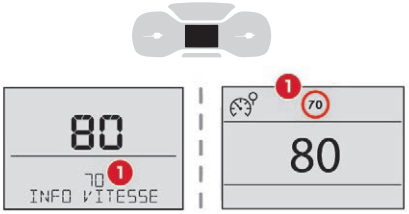
! The units for the speed limit (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in. This should be taken into account so that you observe the speed limit.
For the system to operate correctly when you change country, the units for speed in the instrument panel must be those for the country you are driving in.

! The automatic reading of road signs is a driving aid system and does not always display speed limits correctly.
The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over the display by the system.
The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

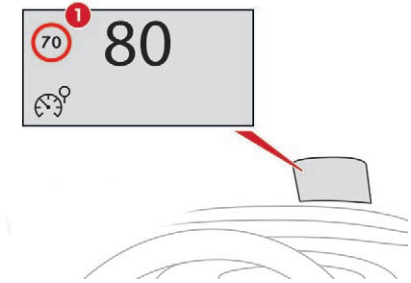
Activation/Deactivation

Activation or deactivation is done in the vehicle configuration menu.

Displays in the instrument panel

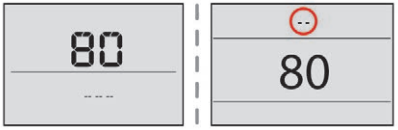


Head-up display



1. Speed limit indication.

Speed display



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.

On detection of speed limit information, the system displays the value.

The driver can, if desired, adjust the speed of the vehicle according to the information given by the system.

Operating limits

The legislation on speed limits is specific to each country.
The system does not take account of reduced speed limits in the following cases:
- poor weather (rain, snow),
- atmospheric pollution,
- when towing,
- driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted,
- puncture repair using the temporary repair kit,
- young drivers, etc.

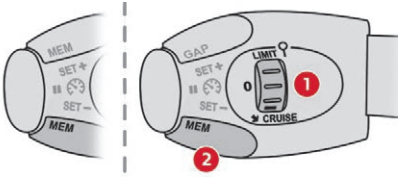
The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, rain, fog),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- fault with the camera,
- obsolete or incorrect mapping,
- hidden road signs (other vehicles, vegetation, snow),
- speed limit signs that do not conform to the standard, are damaged or distorted.

Memorising the speed setting

In addition to **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, the driver can select the speed displayed as a speed setting for the speed limiter or cruise control using the speed limiter or cruise control memorisation button.

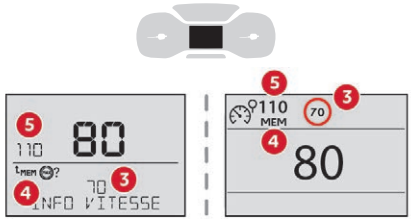
For more information on the **Speed limiter**, **Cruise control** or **Adaptive cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Steering mounted controls

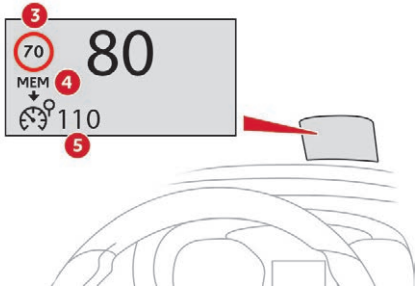


1. Select speed limiter/cruise control mode.
2. Memorise a speed setting.

Displays in the instrument panel



Head-up display



3. Speed limit indication.
4. Speed memorisation request.
5. Current speed setting.

Memorising the speed

☞ Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control.
The speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.
On detection of a sign offering a new speed limit, the system displays the value and "**MEM**" flashes for a few seconds to offer to make it a new speed setting.

> ℹ If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (9 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation, the "**MEM**" symbol is not displayed.

Depending on the road conditions, several speeds may be displayed.

☞ Press button **2 once** to save the suggested speed value.
A message is displayed to confirm the request.

☞ Press button **2 again** to confirm and save the new speed setting.
After a predetermined period, the screen returns to the current display.

Speed limiter

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver (speed setting).

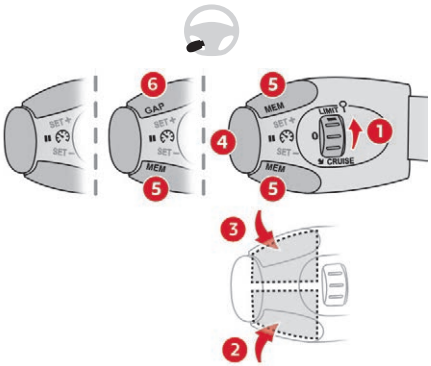
The speed limiter is **switched on** manually.
The minimum speed setting is 19 mph (30 km/h).
The speed setting remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

> ℹ **GAP** For more information on this button and the **Adaptive cruise control**, refer to the corresponding section.

> ℹ **MEM** For more information on **Memorising speeds**, refer to the corresponding section.

> ℹ For more information on **Speed limit recognition** and memorising the speed limit in particular, refer to the corresponding section.

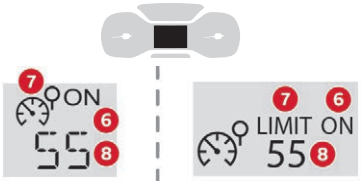
Steering mounted control



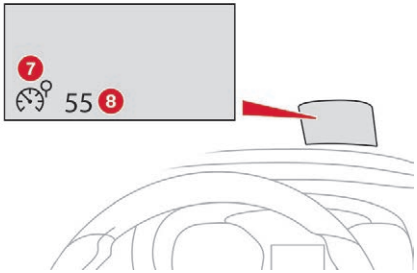
1. ON (**LIMIT** position)/OFF (**0** position).
2. Reduce the speed setting.
3. Increase the speed setting.
4. Pause/resume speed limiter with the speed setting previously stored.
5. Depending on version:
   Display of speed thresholds recorded using Memorising speeds.
   or
   Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation (**MEM** display).
6. Display and adjustment of the programmed inter-vehicle distance.

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Displays in the instrument panel



Head-up display



6. Speed limiter on/pause indication.
7. Speed limiter mode selection indication.
8. Value of the speed setting.

Switching on / pausing

☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the **LIMIT** position to select the speed limiter ; the function is paused.

☞ If the speed setting is suitable (last speed setting programmed in the system), press button **4** to switch the speed limiter on.

☞ Pressing button **4** again temporarily interrupts the function (pause).

Adjusting the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

To modify the limit speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle :

☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button **2** or **3**,

☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

To modify the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen:

☞ press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings,

☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.
This setting becomes the new limit speed.

To modify the limit speed setting from the speed suggested by the vehicle Speed Limit recognition and recommendation:
- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make a first press on button **5** ; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,
- ☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

- ☞ To temporarily exceed the programmed speed threshold, fully depress the accelerator pedal.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes.
If it is exceeded for a prolonged period of time, an audible warning is triggered.
Simply release the accelerator pedal to return to below the programmed speed.

When the limit speed is exceeded but this is not due to action by the driver (in case of a steep slope, for example), an audible signal triggers immediately.

Once the speed of the vehicle returns to the programmed setting, the speed limiter functions again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes fixed again.

Switching off

- ☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**0**" position: the display of information on the speed limiter disappears.

Malfunction

The display of dashes (flashing then fixed) indicates a fault with the speed limiter.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Cruise control - particular recommendations

! For the safety of everyone, only use the cruise control where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed and keeping an adequate safety distance.
Remain vigilant when the cruise control is activated. If you hold one of the speed setting modification buttons, a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle may occur.
When **descending a steep hill**, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary to control the speed of your vehicle.
On **steep climbs** or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

Exceeding the programmed speed setting
The speed setting can be exceeded **temporarily** by pressing the accelerator pedal (the programmed speed flashes).
To return to the speed setting, release the accelerator pedal (when this speed is reached again, the display of the speed stops flashing).

Operating limits
Never use the system in the following situations:
- in an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road,
- in heavy traffic,
- on winding or steep roads,
- on slippery or flooded roads,
- in unfavourable climatic conditions,
- driving on a speed circuit,
- driving on a rolling road,
- use of snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

Cruise control

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and to **Cruise control - particular recommendations**.

This system automatically keeps the vehicle's speed at the cruise value programmed by the driver (speed setting), without using the accelerator pedal.

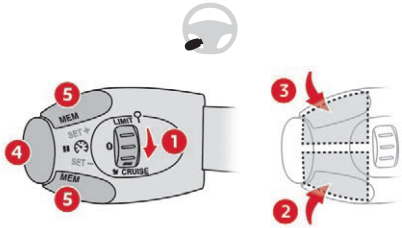
The cruise control is **switched on** manually.
It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).

With a manual gearbox, it requires the engagement of third gear or higher.
With an automatic gearbox, it requires the engagement of mode **D** or of second gear or higher in mode **M**.
With an automatic or electronic gearbox, second gear or higher must be engaged.

The cruise control remains active after changing gear regardless of the gearbox type on engines fitted with Stop & Start.

Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting.

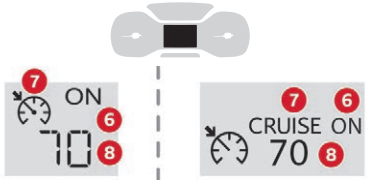
Steering mounted control



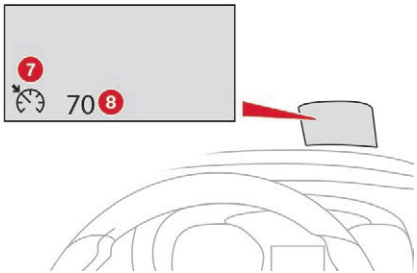
1. ON (**CRUISE** position)/OFF (**0** position).
2. Activation of cruise control at the current speed/decrease speed setting.
3. Activation of cruise control at the current speed/increase speed setting.
4. Pausing/resumption of cruise control with the speed setting previously stored.
5. Depending on version:
   Display of speed thresholds recorded using Memorising speeds.
   or
   Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation (**MEM** display).

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Displays in the instrument panel



Head-up display



6. Cruise control pause/resume indication.
7. Cruise control mode selection indication.
8. Value of the speed setting.

Switching on/pausing

☞ Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position to select cruise control mode ; the function is paused.
☞ To activate the cruise control and save a speed setting, once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press button **2** or **3** ; the current speed of your vehicle becomes the speed setting.

You can release the accelerator pedal.

☞ Pressing button **4** temporarily interrupts the function (pause).
☞ Pressing button **4** again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).

ℹ The operation of the cruise control can also be temporarily interrupted (pause):
- by pressing the brake pedal,
- automatically, if the electronic stability control (ESC) system is triggered.

Modifying the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be active.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:
☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button **2** or **3**,
☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

! Take care: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

! As a precaution, it is recommended that the cruise speed chosen be close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting using memorised speed settings and from the touch screen:
☞ press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings,
☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.
This setting becomes the new cruise speed.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the speed suggested by the vehicle Speed Limit recognition and recommendation:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make an initial press on button **5** ; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
- ☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

If needed (e.g. for overtaking), it is possible to exceed the programmed speed by pressing the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is temporarily overridden and the programmed speed setting flashes. To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.
Once the vehicle has returned to the programmed speed, the cruise control takes over again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes fixed again.

! When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed. You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused. To activate the system again, with the speed of the vehicle above 25 mph (40 km/h), press button **4**.

Switching off

☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**0**" position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

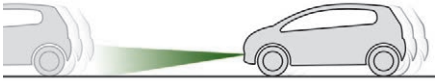
Malfunction

The display of dashes (flashing then fixed) indicates a fault with the cruise control system. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and to **Cruise control - particular recommendations**.

This system **automatically** maintains the speed of your vehicle at a value which you set (speed setting), while keeping a safe distance from the vehicle in front (target vehicle), and which has been set beforehand by the driver. The system automatically manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle using just engine braking (as if the driver had pressed the "-" button).



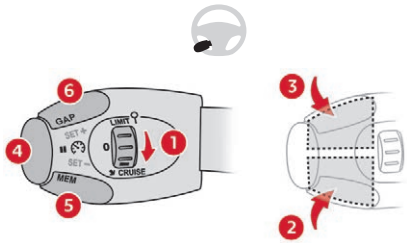
To do so, it has a radar located in the front bumper.

! Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works with moving vehicles driving in the same direction as your vehicle.

i If the driver operates a direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, the cruise control allows your vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle in front to assist the overtaking manoeuvre, without ever exceeding the speed setting.

! Some vehicles present on the road may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by radar (e.g. a lorry), which may lead to a poor assessment of the distances and lead to the vehicle inappropriately accelerating or braking.

Steering mounted control



1 ON (**CRUISE** position)/OFF (**0** position).
2 Activation of cruise control at the current speed/decrease speed setting.

3 Activation of cruise control at the current speed/increase speed setting.

4 Pausing/resumption of cruise control with the speed setting previously stored.

5 Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation (**MEM** display).
6 Display and adjustment of the distance setting to the vehicle in front.

Use

Activating the system (paused)

The adaptive cruise control must be selected in the "**Driving/Vehicle**" menu.

☞ With the engine running, turn the thumbwheel **1** downwards to the **CRUISE** position. Cruise control is ready to operate.

Starting cruise control and selecting a speed

The speed of the vehicle must be between 25 and 93 mph (40 and 150 km/h).
With a manual gearbox, at least third or fourth gear must be engaged.
With an automatic or electronic gearbox, second gear or higher must be engaged.

! If the speed setting is above 93 mph (150 km/h), the adaptive cruise control switches to standard cruise control mode (without automatic regulation of the inter-vehicle safety distance).

☞ Press button **2** or **3**: the current speed becomes the speed setting (25 mph (40 km/h) minimum) and cruise control is activated immediately.

☞ Press **3** to increase or **2** to decrease the speed setting (steps of 5 mph (km/h) if held pressed).

! Pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of the vehicle.

Pausing/resuming cruise control

☞ Press **4** or press the **brake pedal**. It is also possible to press the clutch pedal to pause cruise control.

☞ Press **4** to restart cruise control.
Cruise control may have been paused automatically:
- when an inter-vehicle distance threshold is reached,
- when the distance between your vehicle and the one in front becomes too short,
- when the speed of your vehicle becomes too low or the speed of the vehicle in front becomes too low,
- by triggering of the ESC system.

! When the driver attempts to reactivate cruise control which was paused, the message "Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable" is briefly displayed if reactivation is not possible (safety conditions not met).

Use the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation function or the road sign memorisation to modify the speed setting

☞ Press **5** on the instrument panel or touch screen to accept the speed suggested by the function, then press again to confirm.

! To prevent any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle, select a speed setting fairly close to the current speed of your vehicle.

Changing the inter-vehicle distance

☞ Press **6** to display the distance setting thresholds ("Distant", "Normal", "Close"), then press again to select a threshold.

After a few seconds, the option is accepted and will be memorised when the ignition is switched off.

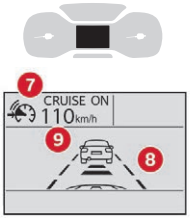
Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

☞ Press the accelerator pedal. Distance monitoring and cruise control are deactivated as long as you continue to accelerate. The speed flashes in the instrument panel.

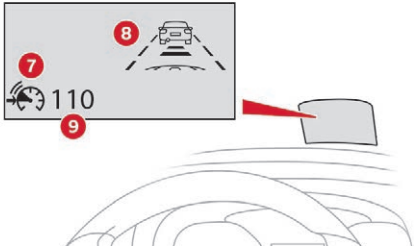
Deactivating the system

☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** upwards to position **0** (**OFF**).

Displays in the instrument panel



Head-up display



7. Cruise control pause/resume indication.
8. Indication of selection of cruise control mode, or vehicle speed adjustment phase.
9. Value of the speed setting.

For more information on the **Head-up display**, refer to the corresponding section.

Messages and alerts

The display of these messages or alerts is not sequential.

"Cruise control paused" or "Cruise control suspended" following a brief acceleration by the driver.

"Cruise control active", no vehicle detected.

"Cruise control active", vehicle detected.

"Cruise control active and speed adjusted", vehicle detected too close or at a slower speed.

"Cruise control active and speed adjusted", automatic deactivation imminent following a cruise control limit being reached.

"Cruise control paused", automatic deactivation following speed limit adjustment being exceeded and no reaction from the driver.

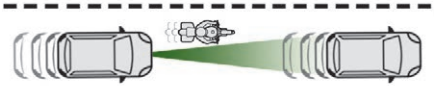
Operating limits

The regulation range is limited to a maximum difference of 19 mph (30 km/h) between the cruise speed setting and the speed of the vehicle in front.
Above this, the system pauses itself if the safety distance becomes too short.
The adaptive cruise control uses only engine braking to slow the vehicle. Consequently the vehicle loses speed slowly, as when releasing the accelerator pedal.
The system is paused automatically:

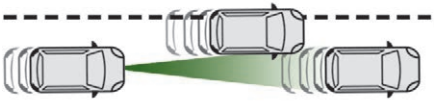
- if the vehicle in front slows down too much or too suddenly, and the driver does not brake,
- if a vehicle comes between your vehicle and the vehicle in front,
- if the system does not slow the vehicle enough to continue to maintain a safe distance, for example when descending a steep hill.

Cases of non-detection by the radar:
- Stationary vehicles (traffic jam, breakdown, etc.).
- Vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

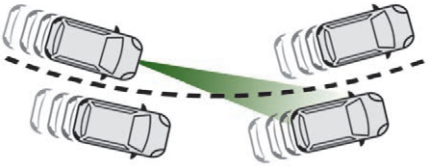
When the driver must suspend the cruise control system:



- When following a narrow vehicle.



- Vehicles not running in the middle of the lane.



- Vehicles entering a corner.
- Vehicles changing lane at the last moment.

Reactivate cruise control when conditions permit.

Cases where the driver is urged to take back control immediately:

- When a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the one in front.
- Excessively sharp deceleration of the vehicle in front of you.

i The adaptive cruise control operates by day and night, in fog or moderate rainfall.

! The system does not act on the braking system, but works only with engine braking.
The regulation range is limited: there will no longer be any adjustment of speed if the difference between the programmed speed setting and the speed of the vehicle in front becomes too great.

! If the difference between the programmed speed setting and the speed of the vehicle in front is too great, the speed cannot be adjusted: the cruise control is automatically deactivated.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction of the adaptive cruise control system, you are warned by an audible signal and the display of the message "Driving aid functions fault".
Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Active Safety Brake with Distance Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system allows:

- the driver to be warned that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front,
- a collision to be prevented, or its severity to be limited, by reducing the vehicle's speed.

This system is comprised of three functions:

- Distance Alert,
- Intelligent emergency braking assistance,

- Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).

The vehicle has a camera located at the top of the windscreen and a radar located in the front bumper.

! This system does not avoid the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.
It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor the state of the traffic, observing the driving regulations.

i As soon as the system detects a potential obstacle, it prepares the braking circuit in case automatic braking is needed. This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Operating conditions and limits

The ESC system must not be faulty.
All passenger seat belts must be fastened.
Driving at a steady speed on roads with few bends is required.

In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is advised:
- towing a trailer,
- carrying long objects on roof bars or roof rack,
- with snow chains fitted,
- before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running,
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop,
- towed vehicle, engine running,
- damaged front bumper,
- Following an impact to the windscreen close to the detection camera.

! It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. Consequently, always stay in control of your vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

! After an impact, the function automatically stops operating. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Distance Alert

It warns the driver if their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front or a pedestrian present in their traffic lane.

Operation

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert threshold chosen by the driver, several different levels of alert may be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel.
They take account of the vehicle dynamics, the speeds of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions and the operation of the vehicle (cornering, actions on the pedals, etc.) to trigger the alert at the best moment.

Level 1 (orange colour): visual alert only, signalling that the vehicle in front is very close.
The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.

Level 2 (red colour): visual and audible alert, signalling that a collision is imminent.
The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.

Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.
Important: the level 1 alert is never displayed for a stationary obstacle or when the "**Close**" trigger threshold has been selected.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This threshold determines how you wish to be warned of the presence of a moving or stationary vehicle in front of you, or a pedestrian present in your traffic lane.

The current threshold can be modified in the vehicle configuration menu using the audio system or the touch screen.

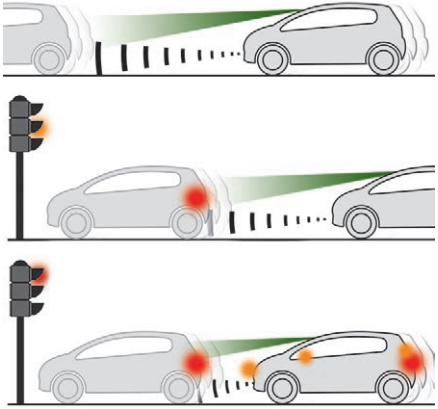
You can select one of three pre-defined thresholds:
- "**Distant**",
- "**Normal**",
- "**Close**".

The last threshold selected is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking, within the limits of the laws of physics. This assistance will only be provided if you press the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, intervenes following the alerts if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.
It aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a frontal collision by your vehicle where the driver fails to react.

Operation

The system operates under the following conditions:
- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 37 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.
- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when a stationary vehicle is detected.
- The vehicle's speed is between 3 mph and 53 mph (5 km/h and 85 km/h) when a moving vehicle is detected.

This warning lamp flashes (for about 10 seconds) once the function is acting on the vehicle's brakes.

With an automatic gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal pressed down to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.
With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the engine may stall.

The driver can maintain control of the vehicle at any time by sharply turning the steering wheel and/or pressing the accelerator pedal.

Operation of the function may be felt by slight vibration in the brake pedal.
If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

This system can be deactivated or activated via the vehicle configuration menu.

Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this indicator lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

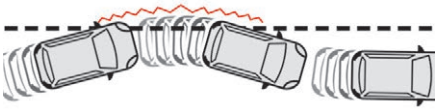
Malfunction

In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the continuous illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

If these warning lamps come on after the engine has been switched off and restarted, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Lane departure warning system

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



System that uses a camera to recognise continuous or broken lines on traffic lanes and triggers an alert if the vehicle wanders off line. If the direction indicator is not activated at a speed of over 50 mph (80 km/h) and there is a risk of one of these lines on the ground being crossed, the system triggers the alert.

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.

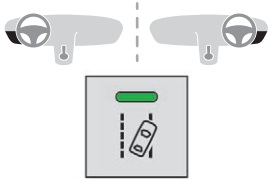
Detection - Alert

You are alerted by the flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is active and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

Activation / Deactivation

With/without audio system



☞ To activate or deactivate the system, press this button.

The indicator lamp is **illuminated** when the system is **activated**.

With touch screen

Activation or deactivation is done in the vehicle configuration menu.

Malfunction

Depending on the vehicle's equipment:

The indicator lamp in this button flashes.

or

The button flashes and a fault appears. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Detection may be disrupted:
- if the markings on the ground are worn and do not contrast well with the road surface,
- if the windscreen is dirty,
- in certain extreme weather conditions: fog, heavy rain, snow, shade, bright sunlight or direct exposure to the sun (low sun, leaving a tunnel, etc.).

Fatigue detection system

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

Take a break as soon as you feel tired or at least every two hours.
Depending on version, the function comprises either the "Driver Attention Warning" system alone or combined with the "Driver Attention Alert" system.

Activation/Deactivation

Activation or deactivation is done in the vehicle configuration menu.

Coffee Break Alert

The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).

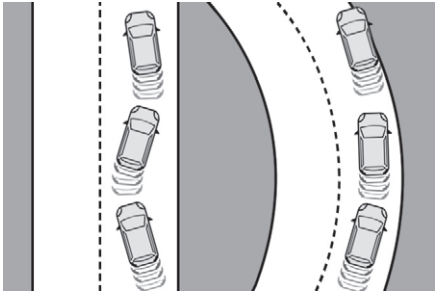
This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging you to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.
If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:
- engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes,
- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes,
- the driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is opened.

As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby.
The driving time is counted again once the speed is above 40 mph (65 km/h).

Driver's Attention Warning

Depending on version, the "Coffee Break Alert" system is combined with the "Driver's Attention Warning" system.



Using a camera placed at the top of the windscreen, the system assesses the driver's level of vigilance by identifying variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings.

This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 40 mph (65 km/h)).

When the system interprets the behaviour of the vehicle as indicating a certain threshold of driver fatigue or inattention, it triggers the first level of alert.
The driver is then alerted by the message "**Take care!**", accompanied by an audible signal.

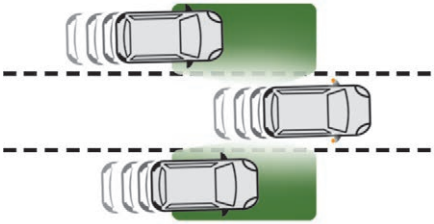
After three first level alerts, the system triggers a further alert with the message "**Dangerous driving: take a break**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

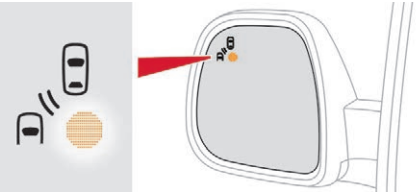
The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
- lane markings absent, worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks),
- close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

Blind Spot Detection

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle (car, lorry, bicycle) in the blind spots of their vehicle (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.

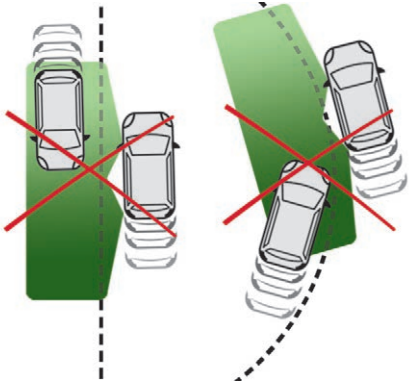


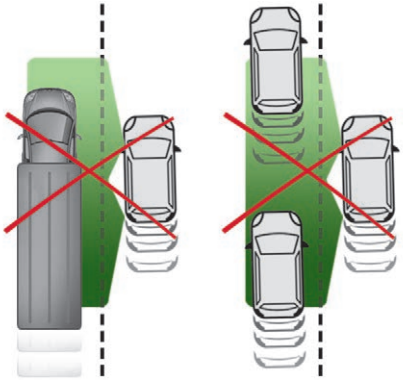
The alert is given by a fixed warning lamp which appears in the door mirror on the side in question:
- immediately, when being overtaken,
- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

Operation

Sensors fitted in the front and rear bumpers monitor the blind spots.
The alert is given by an orange warning lamp coming on in the relevant door mirror, as soon as a vehicle - car, lorry, bicycle - is detected.
The following conditions must be met for this:
- all vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes,
- the speed of your vehicle must be between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h),
- you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 16 mph (25 km/h),
- the traffic is flowing normally,

- overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time where the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not towing a trailer, a caravan, etc.

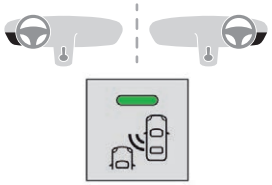




No alert will be given in the following situations:
- in the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, safety barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.),
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction,
- driving on a winding road or sharp bends,
- when overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (lorry, bus, etc.) which is both in the rear blind spot and present in the driver's front field of vision,
- when overtaking quickly,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object.

Activation / Deactivation

With/without audio system



☞ To activate or deactivate the system, press this button.

The indicator lamp is **illuminated** when the system is **activated**.

With touch screen

Activation or deactivation is done in the vehicle configuration menu.

ℹ The system state remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towbar approved by CITROËN.

Malfunction

Depending on your vehicle's equipment:

In the event of a fault, this warning lamp(s) flashes.

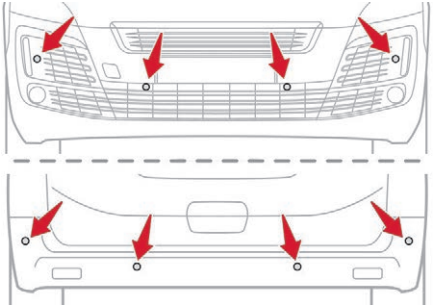
or

The warning lamp in this button flashes and a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Parking sensors

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

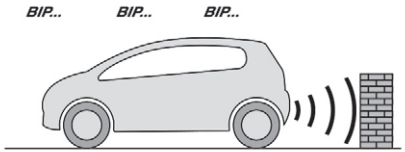


Using sensors located in the bumper, this function warns of the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) entering their field of detection.

Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear, as confirmed by an audible signal.
The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

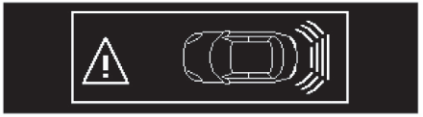
Audible assistance



The function signals the presence of obstacles present within the sensors' detection zone.

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.
The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) allows you to identify the side on which the obstacle is located.

Visual assistance



It supplements the audible signal by displaying bars on the screen that move progressively nearer to the vehicle (green: more distant obstacles ; yellow: close obstacles ; red: very close obstacles).
When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).
The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

ℹ The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle in relation to the vehicle, in front or behind.

Deactivation/Activation

Without audio system

☞ To deactivate or activate the system, press this button.

The indicator lamp **is lit** when the system is **deactivated**.

With audio system or touch screen

The deactivation or activation is carried out via the vehicle configuration menu.

ℹ The rear parking sensors system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Operating limits

- Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
- Sounds such as those emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills, etc.) may interfere with the vehicle's sensors.
- Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.
- Accumulated snow or dead leaves on the road surface can interfere with the vehicle's sensors.
- A front or rear impact to the vehicle can distort the settings of the sensors, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be incorrect.
- The tilting of the vehicle if the boot is very loaded can affect the distance measurements.
- The sensors may be affected by poor weather conditions (heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall, etc.).

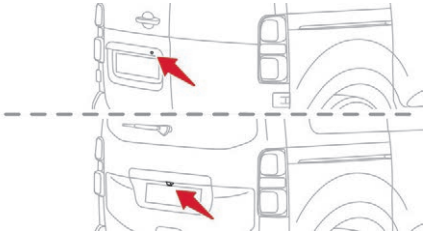
Malfunction

If a malfunction occurs, when shifting to reverse, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal (short beep).

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

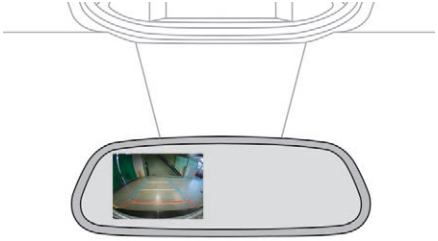
Reversing camera with display in the interior mirror

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

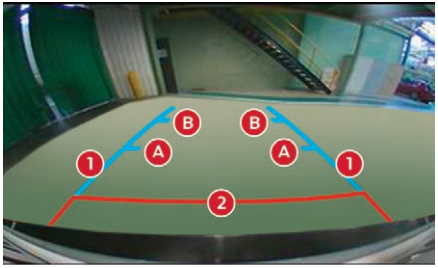


The visual reversing assistance camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

The function may be supplemented by parking sensors.



The image is displayed in the interior mirror.



The blue lines (**1**) represent the width of the vehicle including the mirrors.
The red line (**2**) represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper and the thin blue lines 1 m (**A**) and 2 m (**B**) respectively.

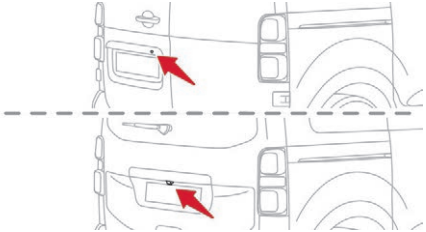
! They are represented as lines marked "on the ground" and do not indicate the position of the vehicle in relation to tall obstacles (e.g. other vehicles).
Some distortion of the image is normal.
It is normal to have a part of the number plate showing at the bottom of the screen.

i Opening the tailgate or rear door (depending on equipment) can interfere with the display.
If a side-hinged door is open, allow for the space it occupies.

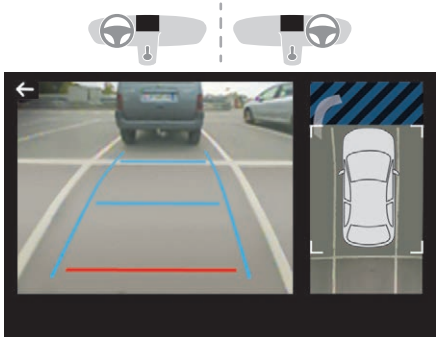
! Check the cleanliness of the camera lens regularly.
Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

Top Rear Vision

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



As soon as reverse gear is engaged with the engine running, this system displays views of your vehicle's close surroundings on the touch screen using a camera located at the rear of the vehicle.



The screen is divided into two parts: on the left, a contextual view ; on the right, a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings.

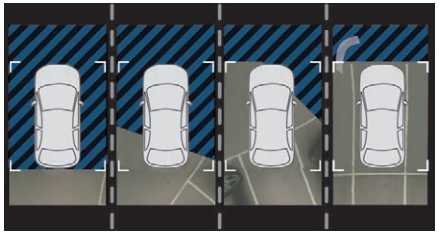
The parking sensors supplement the information on the view from above the vehicle.

Different contextual views can be displayed in the left-hand part:
- standard view,
- 180° view,
- zoom view.

AUTO mode is activated by default.
In this mode, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or zoom) according to the information transmitted by the parking sensors.
You can change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre.

The state of the function is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

Principle of operation



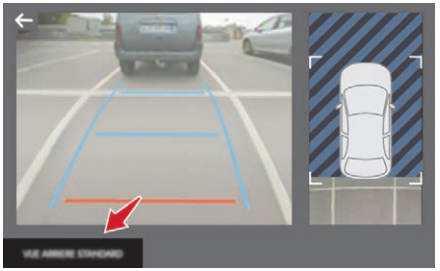
Using the rear camera, the vehicle's surroundings are recorded during manoeuvres at low speed.

An image from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is reconstructed (represented between the blue brackets) in real time and as the manoeuvre progresses.
This representation facilitates the alignment of your vehicle when parking and allows obstacles close to the vehicle to be seen.
This image is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

> The display disappears above approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).
> The system is automatically deactivated about 7 seconds after coming out of reverse or on opening a door or the boot.

Activation

Activation is automatic on engaging reverse at a speed lower than 6 mph (10 km/h).



You can choose the display mode at any time by pressing on this area.

When the sub-menu is displayed, select one of the four views:

"Standard view".

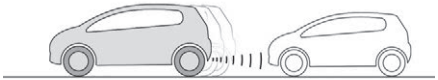
"180° view".

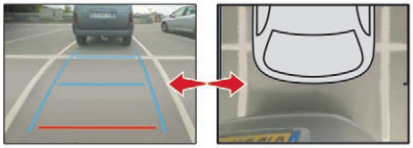
"Zoom view".

"AUTO mode".

The function will be deactivated:
- If a trailer is attached or a bicycle carrier is fitted on a towing device (vehicle fitted with a towing device installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations).
- Above about 6 mph (10 km/h).
- On opening the tailgate.
- When shifting out of reverse (the image remains displayed for 7 seconds).
- By pressing the red cross or the white arrow in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

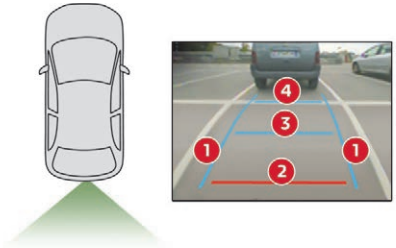
AUTO mode





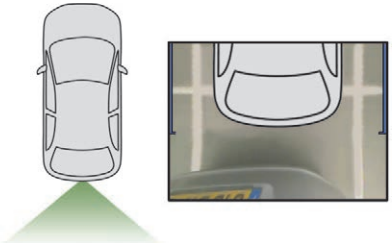
This mode is activated by default.
Using sensors in the rear bumper, the automatic view changes from a rear view (standard) to a view from above (zoom), as an obstacle is approached at the level of the red line (less than 30 cm) during a manoeuvre.

Standard view



The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.
The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded ; their direction changes depending on the position of the steering wheel.
The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the bumper ; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

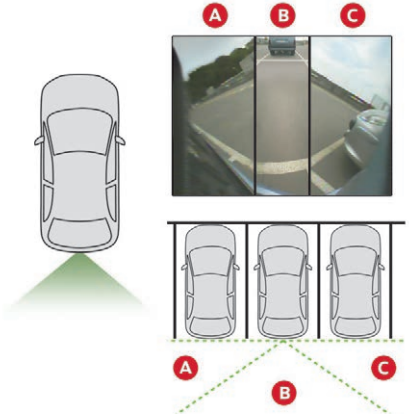
Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

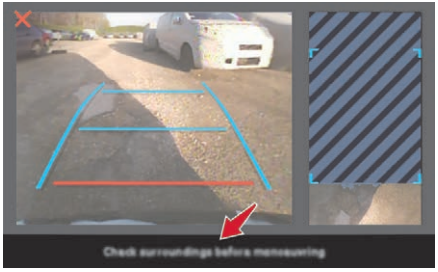
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are in reality.
It is important to check the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.
The rear parking sensors also provide information on the vehicle's surroundings.

180° view



The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking bay, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.
This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.
It consists of 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**.
This view is available only from the view selection menu.

Quick start mode



This mode displays, as quickly as possible, the contextual view (left-hand part) and the overhead view of the vehicle.
A message is displayed advising you to check your vehicle's surroundings before starting the manoeuvre.

FILL UP WITH CONFIDENCE

WITH TOTAL QUARTZ LUBRICANTS

For more than 45 years, TOTAL and CITROËN have shared common values: excellence, creativity and technological innovation.
It is in this same spirit that TOTAL has developed a range of TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants adapted to CITROËN engines, making them even more fuel efficient and protective of the environment.
TOTAL and CITROËN test the reliability and the performance of their products during motorsport races in extreme conditions.

Choose TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants to maintain your vehicle, this is your assurance of optimum durability and performance from your engine.

Compatibility of fuels

B7 B10 B20 B30

Diesel fuels conforming to the EN590, EN16734 and EN16709 standards respectively and containing up to 7%, 10%, 20% and 30% fatty acid methyl ester respectively. The use of B20 or B30 fuels, even occasionally, imposes special maintenance conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel conforming to the EN15940 standard.

! The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

i The only Diesel fuel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0 °C (+32 °F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could prevent the engine from operating correctly. In these temperature conditions, use winter-type Diesel fuel and keep the fuel tank more than 50 % full.
At temperatures below -15 °C (+5 °F) to avoid problems starting, it is best to park the vehicle under shelter (heated garage).

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage your vehicle's engine.
In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For all additional information, consult a dealer.

Refuelling

Fuel tank capacity: Approximately 69 litres.

Reserve level: 6 litres.

Low fuel level

When the low fuel level in the tank is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

When it first comes on, **less than 8 litres** remain in the tank.
You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

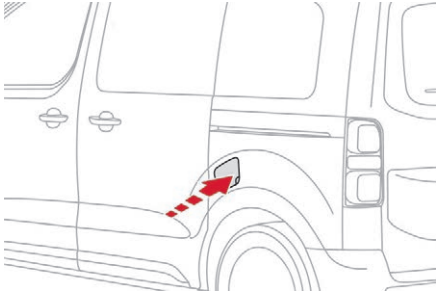
! **Stop & Start**
Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode ; you must switch off the ignition.

7

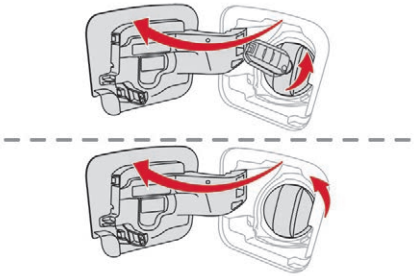
Refuelling

At least 8 litres of fuel must be added, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.
Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal, resulting from the sealing of the fuel system.

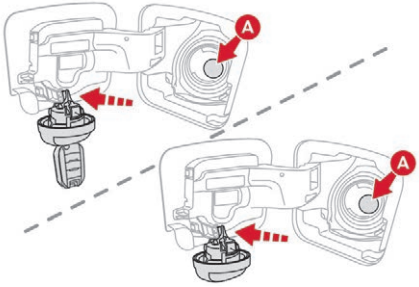
☞ **You must switch off the engine.**
☞ With Keyless Entry and Starting, unlock the vehicle.



☞ Open the fuel filler flap.

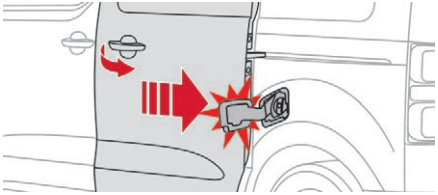


☞ With a conventional key, insert the key into the filler cap, then turn the key to the left.



☞ Unscrew and remove the filler cap, then place it on its holder (located on the fuel filler flap).
☞ Introduce the nozzle and push it in fully (pushing on the metal non-return flap **A**).
☞ Fill the tank. Do not continue past the third cut-off of the nozzle, as this may cause malfunctions.

☞ Put the filler cap back in place and close it by turning to the right.
☞ Push the fuel filler flap to close it (the vehicle must be unlocked).



! If the vehicle is equipped with one, do not open the left-hand sliding side door when the fuel filler flap is open (there is a risk that the fuel filler flap and the sliding door may be damaged and the person filling up may be injured).

! If the fuel filler flap is open and you try to open the left-hand side door, a mechanism prevents it from being opened. The door can be opened half way however.
With a mechanical door, close the fuel filler flap to regain use of the door.
With an electric door, in order to be able to use it correctly, close the fuel filler flap then press an opening button.

The vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter which reduces harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

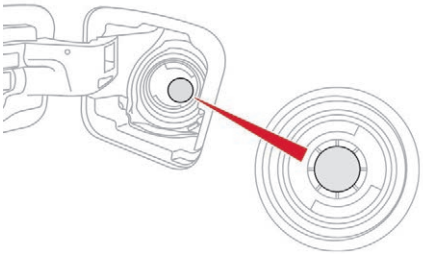
! If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

Fuel cut-off

Your vehicle is fitted with a safety system that cuts off the supply of fuel in the event of an impact.

Diesel misfuel prevention

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It helps avoid the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.
Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of your Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.
Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

i It is still possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank slowly.
In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device.

i **Driving abroad**
As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.
Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the CITROËN dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

! The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

i Take account of the legislation specific to each country on the use of snow chains and the maximum authorised speed.

Installation tips

- ☞ If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- ☞ Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
- ☞ Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

ℹ It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

! Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Type of chain
215/65 R16	12 mm link
215/60 R17	KONIG K-SUMMIT VAN K84
225/55 R17	

You can also use snow socks.
For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Towing device

Load distribution

- ☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1,000 metres of altitude.

ℹ Use towing devices and their unmodified harnesses approved by CITROËN. It is recommended that the installation be performed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the towing device is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.
Certain driving assistance or manoeuvring assistance functions are automatically disabled if an approved towbar is used.

! Observe the maximum authorised towable weight, indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, the manufacturer's label as well as in the **Technical data** section of this guide.
Complying with the maximum authorised nose weight (towball) also includes the use of accessories (bicycle carriers, tow boxes, etc.).

! Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.
After switching off the engine and for a maximum cumulative period of around 40 minutes, you can continue to use functions such as the audio and telematics system, the wipers, the dipped beam headlamps, the courtesy lamps, etc.

Switching to this mode

A message appears in the instrument panel screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

i If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system.

Exiting the mode

These functions will be automatically reactivated the next time the vehicle is used.
In order to restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:
- for less than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 5 minutes,
- for more than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 30 minutes.

Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.
Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.

! A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning and the heated rear screen.
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

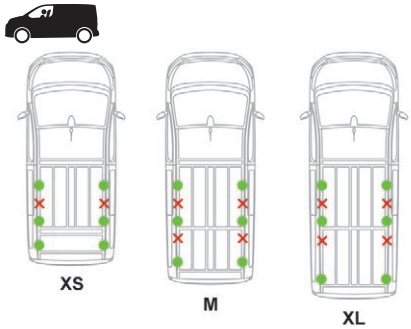
Roof bars/Roof rack

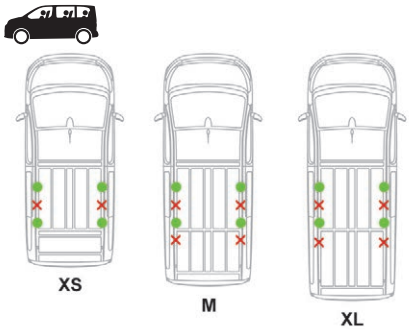
! As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the roof bars and racks approved for the vehicle.
Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars and racks.

! **Recommendations**
Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.
Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
Secure the load securely.
Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.
Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars, at least before each trip.
Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

! As this value may change, please verify the maximum load set out in the manual supplied with the roof bars.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.

Roof bars





Use the green positions.
Max. authorised weight carried:
- on 2 roof bars: 100 kg,
- spread on 3 roof bars: 150 kg.

To fit the transverse roof bars, use the fixing points provided for this purpose:
☞ Open the fixing covers on each bar.
☞ Put each fixing in place and lock them on the roof one by one.
☞ Ensure that roof bars are correctly fitted (by shaking them).
☞ Close the fixing covers on each bar.
The bars can be interchanged and are adaptable to each pair of fixing points.

Roof racks

Max. authorised weight carried:
- for XS: 140 kg,
- for M and XL: 170 kg.

To fit a roof rack, use the fixing points provided for this purpose:
☞ Place the roof rack aligned with the fixing points and secure each one in turn on the roof.
☞ Ensure that roof rack is correctly fixed (by shaking it).

Bonnet

!

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

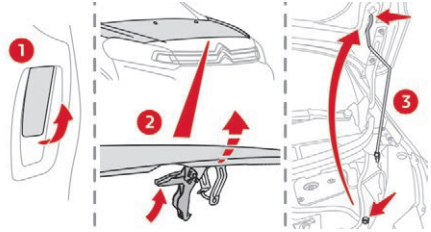
i The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening the bonnet when the left-hand front door is shut.

! When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.
When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.
Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

! **The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.**

Opening

☞ Open the door.



☞ Pull towards you the release lever (**1**), located at the bottom of the door frame.

☞ Lift the safety catch (**2**), then raise the bonnet.

☞ Unclip the stay (**3**) from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

Closing

☞ Take the stay out of the support slot.

☞ Clip the stay in its housing.

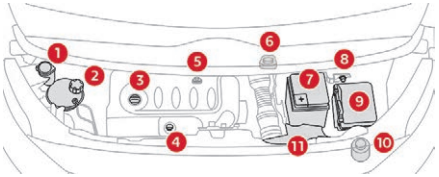
☞ Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.

☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is fully latched.

! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

Engine

Diesel



This engine is an example only. The location of the dipstick and engine oil filler cap, as well as the priming pump may vary.

1. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
2. Engine coolant reservoir.
3. Engine oil filler cap.
4. Engine oil dipstick.
5. Priming pump.
6. Brake fluid filler cap.
7. Battery.
8. Remote earth point ("-" terminal).
9. Fusebox.
10. Power steering fluid reservoir.
11. Air filter.

! The diesel circuit is under very high pressure.
All work on this circuit must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checking levels

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The fluids must comply with the manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

! Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health and very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Engine oil

The oil level is checked on a level surface with the engine stopped for at least 30 minutes, either using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on (for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge), or using the dipstick.

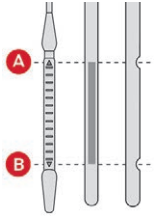
It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). It is recommended that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

! In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, non-fluffy cloth.
☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between marks **A** and **B**.



A = MAX
B = MIN

Do not start the engine if the level is:
- Above mark **A**, then contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- Below mark **B**, then top up the engine oil immediately.

Oil grade
Before topping up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.

☞ Add more oil if necessary.
☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

i During the 30 minutes after topping up the oil, the check performed with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid.

Brake fluid

The level of this fluid should be close to the "**MAX**" mark. If not, check the brake pad wear.

To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

! If topping up, clean the cap before replacing it. Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed canister.

Power steering fluid

The level of this fluid should be close to the "**MAX**" mark. With the engine cold and the vehicle standing on level ground, check this by reading the level on the filler neck.

Engine coolant

Check the engine coolant level regularly.
It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.
A low level presents a risk of serious damage to the engine.
The level of this fluid should be close to the "**MAX**" mark but should never exceed it.
If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to top up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of this fluid is regulated by the fan.
In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
To avoid the risk of scalding if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.
Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

Screen and headlamp washer fluid

Top up the reservoir when you next stop the vehicle.

Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a ready-to-use mixture.
In winter (temperatures below zero), a liquid containing an agent to prevent freezing must be used which is appropriate for the prevailing conditions, in order to protect the elements of the system (pump, tank, ducts, jets, etc.).

! Filling with pure water is prohibited under all circumstances (risk of freezing, limestone deposits, etc.).

Diesel fuel additive (Diesel with particle filter)

or

The minimum level in the particle filter additive tank is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible warning and a message warning that the level of additive is too low.

Topping up

This additive must be topped up without delay by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

AdBlue (BlueHDi)

An alert is triggered once the reserve level is reached.
For more information on the **Indicators** and in particular the AdBlue range indicators, refer to the corresponding section.
To avoid the vehicle being immobilised as per regulations, you must top up the AdBlue tank.

For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi)**, and in particular on the supply of AdBlue, refer to the corresponding section.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.
Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.

12 V battery

The battery does not require any maintenance.
However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

i For more information on the precautions to take before any work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification.
Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Passenger compartment filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often if necessary**.

i A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Air filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often if necessary**.

Oil filter

Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Particle filter (Diesel)

or

The start of saturation of the particle filter is signalled by the temporary illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by a message warning of the risk of the filter clogging up.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.

If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low Diesel additive level.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

New vehicle
The first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal.

Manual gearbox

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Electronic gearbox

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Brake pads

Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

Brake disc/drum wear

For any information on checking brake disc/drum wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Parking brake

If excessive travel or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be adjusted, even between two services.

This system must be checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Wheels and tyres

The pressure must be checked on all tyres, including the spare wheel, when the tyres are "cold".

The pressures indicated on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at over 31 mph (50 km/h), add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.

! Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressure causes premature wear on tyres and has an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of an accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces the braking and road holding performance of the vehicle. It is recommended to regularly check the condition of the tyres (tread and sidewalls) and wheel rims as well as the presence of the valves.
Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.

Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of its Diesel engines, CITROËN has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR system

Using a liquid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.

The AdBlue® is contained in **a special tank** holding about 20 litres.

Its capacity allows a driving range of approximately 4,300 miles (7,000 km) (**highly dependent** on your driving style and the vehicle). An alert system is triggered automatically when the remaining range reaches 1,500 miles (2,400 km), i.e. once the reserve level has been reached.
Several alerts are triggered successively during the remaining 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty and the vehicle is disabled.

If the estimated distance travelled by the vehicle between two services is greater than 3,700 miles (6,000 km), it will be necessary to top up the AdBlue.

i For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and the associated alerts, or the **Indicators**, refer to the corresponding sections.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.
If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from the vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: the vehicle becomes polluting.
In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after travelling a distance of 685 miles (1,100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.
In either case, a range indicator gives the distance that can be travelled before the vehicle is immobilised.

i **Freezing of the AdBlue®**
AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.
The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Supply of AdBlue®

It is recommended that the AdBlue® be topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

! In order to ensure that the SCR system operates correctly:
- Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
- Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.
- Never dilute AdBlue® with water.

AdBlue® can be obtained from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i You can also visit a service station equipped with AdBlue® pumps specially designed for passenger vehicles.

! Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11 °C and deteriorates above +25 °C. Containers should be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight.
Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.
If the fluid has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out at room temperature.

! Never store AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.

Precautions for use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (when kept in a cool place).
In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and running water. In the event of contact with the eyes, immediately rinse the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation, get medical attention.
If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.

In certain conditions (high temperature, for example), risks of the release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the vapour. Vapours containing ammonia have an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container.

Procedure

Before starting the top-up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.

In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11 °C. Otherwise the AdBlue® may be frozen and so cannot be poured into its tank. Park the vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

! Never put the AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

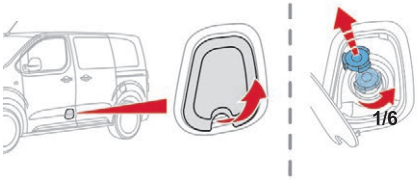
! If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the bodywork, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch to switch off the engine.

or

☞ With Keyless Entry and Starting, press the "**START/STOP**" button to switch off the engine.

Access to the AdBlue® tank



☞ For access to the AdBlue® tank, open the front left-hand door.

☞ From below, pull the black cover.

☞ Turn the blue cap 1/6 of a turn anti-clockwise.

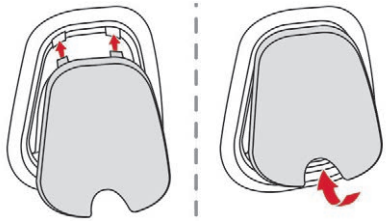
☞ Lift off the cap.

☞ Obtain a container of AdBlue®. After first checking the use-by date, carefully read the instructions for use on the label before pouring the contents of the container into the vehicle's AdBlue tank.

Or

☞ Insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle and refill the tank until the nozzle stops automatically.

☞ After refilling, carry out the same operations in reverse order.



☞ Refit the black cover, starting at the top.

! To avoid overflowing the AdBlue® tank:
- Top up between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.

Or
- Do not continue after the nozzle's first automatic cut-off if you are refilling at a service station.

! If your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty – which is confirmed by the message "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible", you must top up with at least 5 litres.

! Important: **in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of AdBlue,** you must wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, locking the vehicle, introducing the key into the ignition switch, or introducing the key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system into the passenger compartment**.
Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

Advice on care

General recommendations on the care and maintenance of your vehicle are given in the warranty and maintenance record.

! Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging your vehicle:
- Do not clean your headlamps with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products. Use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
- When using a high-pressure washer on stubborn dirt, avoid prolonged use on the headlamps, the lamps and their edges to avoid damaging their lacquer finish and seals.
- Never use an abrasive sponge to clean persistent dirt, as this may scratch the paint surface. Use a soft cloth with soapy water instead.
- When washing your vehicle, never clean the interior with a water jet.
- When washing your vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock your doors and, depending on version, remove the key and deactivate the "**Hands-Free Access**" system.
- Never use high-pressure washing to clean the engine compartment, in order to avoid damaging the electrical units.
- Liquids carried in an open vessel (e.g. a cup or mug) could be spilt, presenting a risk of damage on contact with the controls in the dashboard and centre console. Be careful.

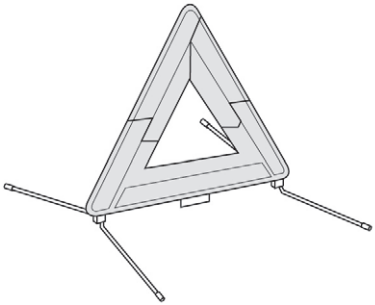
Depending on version, in order to avoid damaging or unpeeling the stickers on the bodywork, you are strongly advised against using high-pressure cleaners to wash your vehicle. It is recommended that you wash it using a high-flow water jet and rinse the vehicle down using demineralised water.
Only a microfibre cloth is recommended for wiping your vehicle ; it must be clean and used gently.

i It is always preferable to have paint repairs carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning triangle

This safety equipment should be used in addition to the hazard warning lamps.

Placing the triangle on the road



☞ Place the triangle behind the vehicle, as required by the legislation in force in your country.

Before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.

Refer to the manufacturer's instructions on unfolding and assembly supplied with the triangle.

ℹ The triangle is available as an accessory ; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

With Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.
Before priming, at least 5 litres of Diesel fuel must be added to the tank.

ℹ For more information on **Refuelling** and **Misfuel prevention (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

For all versions other than BlueHDi, the components are located in the engine compartment ; they can be found under the removable cover.

ℹ For more information about the **Engine compartment**, in particular the location of these components under the bonnet, refer to the corresponding section.

1.5 BlueHDi engines

☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
☞ Wait around 1 minute and switch off the ignition.
☞ Operate the starter motor to start the engine.

If the engine does not start at the first attempt, do not keep trying, but restart the procedure.

2.0 BlueHDi engines

☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
☞ Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
☞ Repeat the operation 10 times.
☞ Operate the starter motor to start the engine.

If the engine does not start at the first attempt, do not keep trying, but restart the procedure.

1.6 HDi engines

☞ Open the bonnet and then, if necessary, unclip the cover to access the priming pump.

☞ Operate the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (resistance may be felt at the first press).

- Operate the starter motor to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again, then the starter motor.
- Put the cover back in place and clip it in, then close the bonnet.

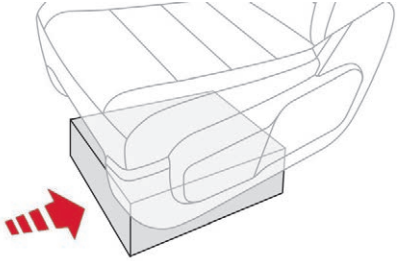
2.0 HDi engines

- Open the bonnet and then, if necessary, unclip the cover to access the priming pump.
- Loosen the degassing bolt.

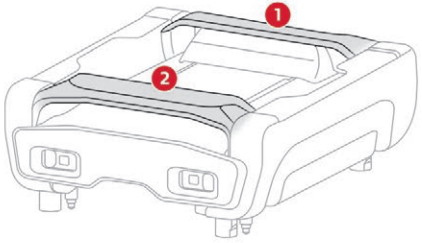
- Operate the priming pump until fuel appears in the transparent tube.
- Retighten the degassing bolt.
- Operate the starter motor until the engine starts (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again, then the starter motor.
- Put the cover back in place and clip it in, then close the bonnet.

Tool box

Access

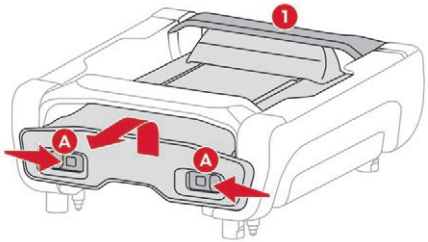


The tool box is located under the left-hand front seat.

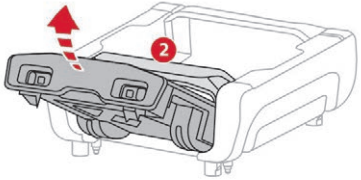


As a safety measure, bars **1** and **2** prevent the box escaping from its housing, if it is not correctly secured.

Removing

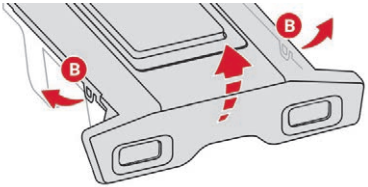


- Press latches **A** and slide them inwards to release the box.
- Lift the box slightly then pull it as far as it will go to take it past bar **1**.



- Then, lift the box upwards to take it past bar **2**.

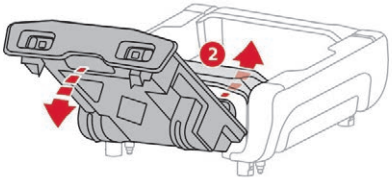
Opening



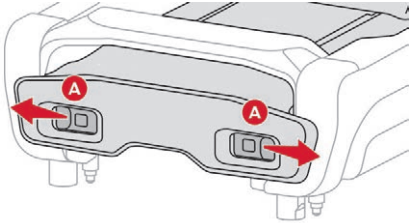
☞ Unclip fixings **B** on the cover, then open it for access to the tools.

Storage

☞ Refit the cover on the box and clip fixings **B**.



☞ Position the box with the front inclined upwards.
☞ To take it past bar **2**, push the box in and down.
☞ To take it past bar **1**, raise the box slightly then push it fully in.



☞ Once the box is **fully home** in its housing, push it against the floor carpet then slide latches **A** outwards to secure it.

ℹ Pull on the box to check that it is secure in its housing.

Temporary puncture repair kit

ℹ Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Comprising a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

ℹ It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.
Its compressor can be used to check and adjust the pressure of the tyre.

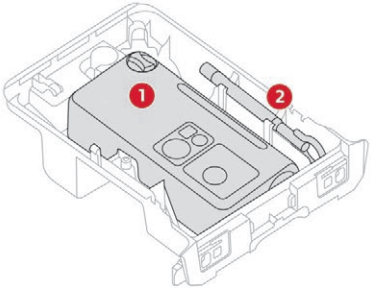
Access to the kit

This kit is stowed in a tool box.

ℹ For more information on the **Tool box**, refer to the corresponding section.

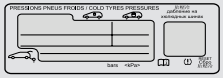
List of tools

These tools are specific to the vehicle and may vary according to the level of equipment. Do not use them for any other purpose.



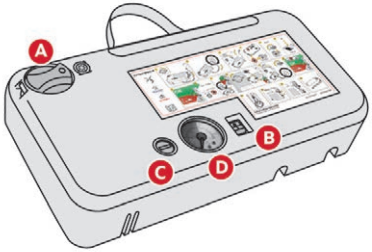
1. 12 V compressor.
   Contains a sealant cartridge for the temporary repair of a tyre and can also be used for adjusting tyre pressures.
2. Towing eye.

For more information on **Towing**, refer to the corresponding section.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

Composition of the kit

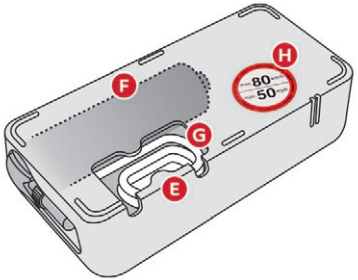


A. "Sealant"/"Repair" or "Air"/"Inflation" position selector.

B. On I/off O switch.

C. Deflation button.

D. Pressure gauge (in bars and psi).



E. Compartment including a cable with an adapter for a 12 V socket.

F. Sealant cartridge.

G. White pipe with cap for repair and inflation.

H. Speed limit sticker.

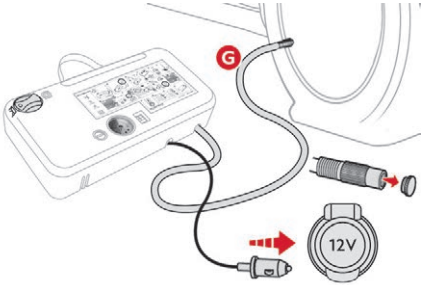
The vehicle's electrical system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.
Only use the two 12 V sockets, located at the **front**, to connect your compressor.

Repair and sealing procedure

- Park the vehicle without obstructing any traffic and apply the parking brake.
- Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
- Switch off the ignition.

- Turn the selector **A** to the "Repair" position.
- Check that switch **B** is in position "**O**".

Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated the tyre.



- Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- Unscrew the cap from the white pipe.
- Connect the white pipe to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.

☞ Connect the compressor's electrical plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

☞ Affix the speed limit sticker.

! The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

☞ Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

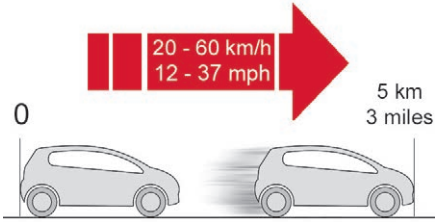
i Do not start the compressor before connecting the white pipe to the tyre valve: the sealant product would be expelled through the pipe.

☞ Switch on the compressor by moving switch **B** to position I until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre ; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

i If after approximately seven minutes this pressure is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable ; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

☞ Remove the kit and screw the cap back on the white pipe. Take care to avoid contaminating the vehicle with traces of fluid. Keep the kit to hand.

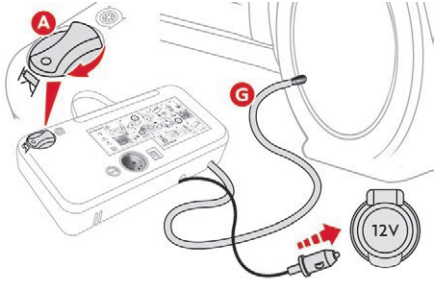
! Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.
After use, do not discard the bottle in standard waste, take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.

☞ Stop to check the repair and **measure the tyre pressure** using the kit.

Inflation, occasional inflation and checking pressure



- Turn selector **A** to the "Inflation" position.
- Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- Connect the white pipe to the valve of the repaired wheel.

- Connect the compressor's electrical plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket again.
- Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

! As soon as possible, go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
You must inform the technician that this kit was used. After inspection, the technician will tell you whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position "**I**" ; to deflate: switch **B** in position "**O**" and press button **C**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label, located on the driver's door aperture.
A significant loss of pressure indicates that the puncture has not been fully plugged ; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.
- Remove the kit and stow it.

! - Drive at reduced speed (50 mph (80 km/h) max.) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 125 miles (200 km).

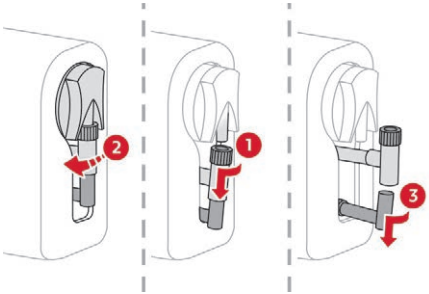
i It is also possible to use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.

i If after 7 minutes this pressure is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable ; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

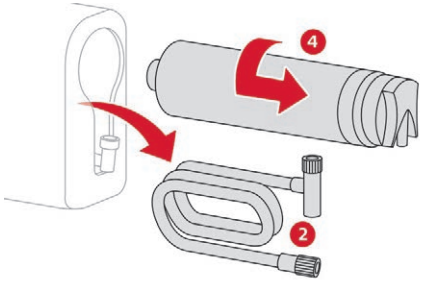
! Do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km) with a repaired tyre ; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to change the tyre.

! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Removing the pipe and cartridge



- Turn the pipe assembly **2** to the left until it comes into contact with the unit.
- Disconnect the connector **1** from the cartridge by turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- Pull the pipe assembly **2** out slightly, then disconnect the connector **3** from the air intake pipe by turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.



☞ Remove the pipe assembly **2**.
☞ Keep the compressor vertical.
☞ Unscrew the cartridge **4** from the bottom.

To fit the new cartridge and new pipe, carry out these operations in reverse order.

! Be careful of fluid discharge.
The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the cartridge.
The sealant cartridge is designed for single use ; it must be replaced even if only partly used.
After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to an authorised waste disposal site or a CITROËN dealer.
Do not forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from CITROËN dealers or from a qualified workshop.

Spare wheel

i Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

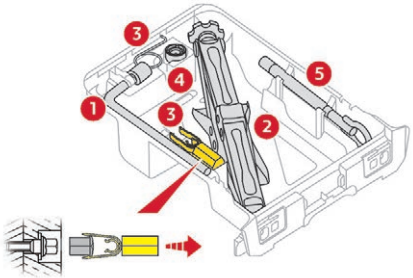
Procedure for changing a damaged wheel with the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

Access to the tools

The tools are stowed in a tool box.

i For more information on the **Tool box**, refer to the corresponding section.

List of tools



1. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel bolts and raising/lowering the jack.
2. Jack.
   Used to raise the vehicle.
3. Wheel bolt cover/wheel trim removal tool.
   If present on your vehicle, it is used to remove the wheel bolt covers on alloy wheels or the wheel trim on steel wheels.
4. Socket for the wheel security bolts.
   Used for adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.
5. Towing eye.

i For more information on **Towing**, refer to the corresponding section.

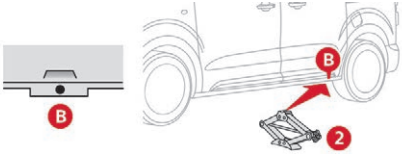
! All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary depending on equipment.
Do not use them for any other purposes.

! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre. Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with this vehicle.
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the correct jack for it.
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

Access to the spare wheel

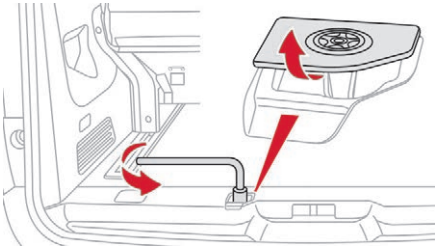
☞ Access to the spare wheel is from the rear.
☞ Depending on version, open the side-hinged doors or the tailgate.

i To avoid any unwanted opening of the electric side door(s), deactivate the Hands-Free Access function in the vehicle configuration menu.
For more information on the **Hands-Free Sliding Side Door**, refer to the corresponding section.

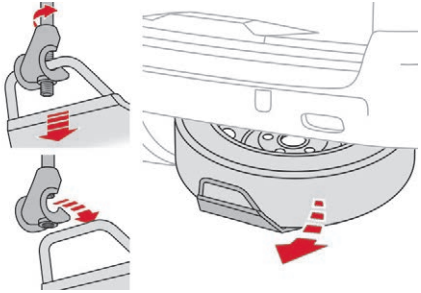


☞ If the vehicle is fitted with a towing device, raise the rear of the vehicle using the jack (must be at jacking point **B**) to allow sufficient space to remove the spare wheel.

Remove the spare wheel from the carrier

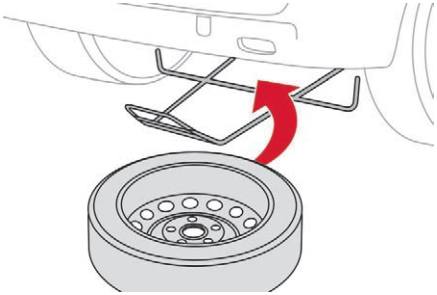


☞ Access the carrier bolt, located on the rear door sill.
☞ Slacken the bolt using the wheelbrace (about 14 turns) until the carrier is low enough to allow the carrier hook to be disengaged.



☞ Release the carrier from the hook, take the spare wheel and place it next to the wheel to be changed.

Refit the spare wheel in the carrier



☞ Position the wheel facing the carrier.
☞ Progressively return the wheel to the carrier by pushing alternately at the left and right until it is clear of the hook fixing area.

☞ Engage the carrier on the hook, then tighten the bolt using the wheelbrace until the bolt is fully tightened.

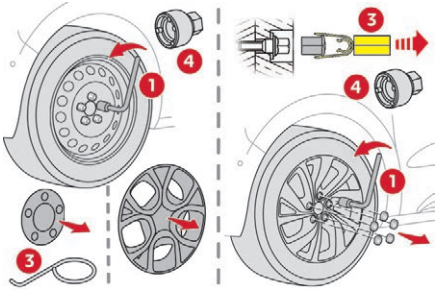
Tyre in the carrier
If you want to change the size of the tyre on the spare wheel, follow the instructions below.

Original tyre size	XS-M	XL
215/65 R16	Placing a 225 wheel in the carrier is prohibited.	There is no restriction.
215/60 R17		
215/60 R17 M&S		
225/55 R17	Placing a 215 wheel in the carrier is not recommended (risk of noise).	

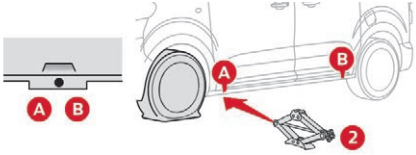
ℹ A punctured tyre of size 215 or 225 can be placed in the carrier.

Removing a wheel

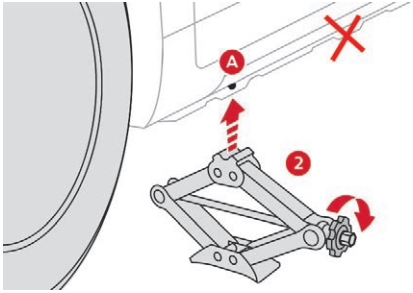
! Parking the vehicle
Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.
With a manual gearbox, engage first gear then switch off the ignition to block the wheels.
With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector in position **P** then switch off the ignition to block the wheels.
With an electronic gearbox, place the gear selector in position **A** then switch off the ignition to block the wheels.
Apply the parking brake and check that the warning lamp is on in the instrument panel.
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack ; use an axle stand.

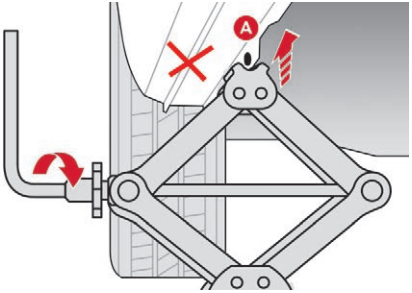


☞ With a steel wheel, remove the bolt cover using tool **3** or the trim by hand.
☞ With an alloy wheel, remove the cap from each of the bolts using tool **3**.
☞ If the vehicle is so equipped, fit security bolt socket **4** to wheelbrace **1** to slacken the security bolt.
☞ **Slacken** (without removing) the other wheel bolts using just wheelbrace **1**.



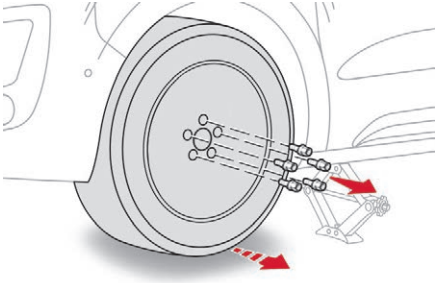
☞ Place the foot of the jack on the ground and ensure that it is directly below jacking point **A** or **B** provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.





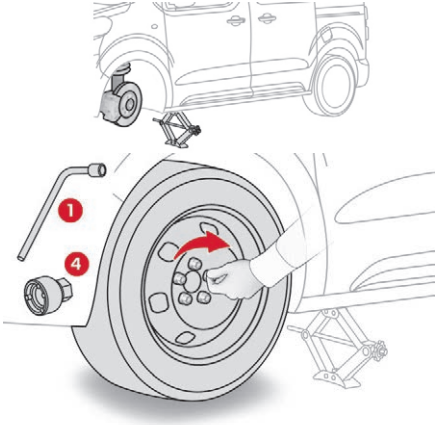
- Extend jack **2** using the adjustment wheel, until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**, whichever is used ; the contact surface **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be correctly engaged with the central part of the head of the jack.
- Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.

! Risk of injury!
Ensure that the jack is absolutely stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or drop.
Ensure that the jack is positioned strictly at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, making sure that the vehicle's contact surface is correctly centred on the head of the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle could be damaged and/or the jack could collapse.

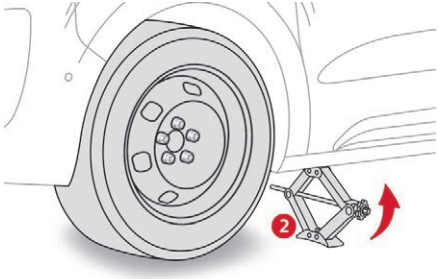


- Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- Remove the wheel.

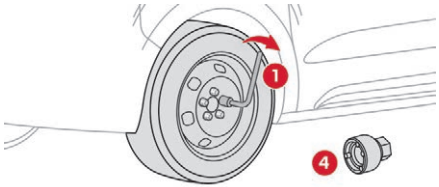
Fitting the wheel



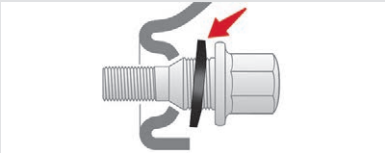
- Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
- If the vehicle is so equipped, **pre-tighten** the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **4**.
- **Pre-tighten** the other bolts using wheelbrace **1** only.



- Lower the vehicle again fully.
- Fold the jack **2** and detach it.



- If the vehicle is so equipped, tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **4**.
- **Tighten** the other bolts using wheelbrace **1** only.
- Stow the tools in the tool box.



Fitting a steel or "space-saver" spare wheel
If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

After changing a wheel
Stow the punctured wheel in the carrier.
Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Some driving aid functions should be disabled, e.g. the Active Safety Brake.

If your vehicle has tyre under-inflation detection, check the tyre pressures and reinitialise the system.
For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tyre under-inflation detection
The steel spare wheel does not have a sensor.

Wheel with hub cap
When refitting the wheel, refit the hub cap starting by placing its notch facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.

Changing a bulb

The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:

- **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
- when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the lamp has been switched off for several minutes - Risk of serious burns!

- Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

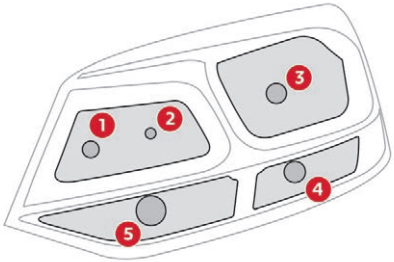
Halogen bulbs
To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.

Opening the bonnet/Access to bulbs
With the engine warm, proceed with caution - risk of burns!
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the engine cooling fan - risk of strangulation!

After changing a bulb
To refit, carry out the operations in reverse order to removal.
Close the protective cover very carefully to guarantee the sealing of the lamps.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal ; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

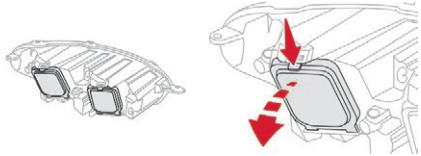
Headlamps (halogen)



1. Sidelamps (W5W-5W).
2. Main beam headlamps (H1-55W).
3. Dipped beam headlamps (H7-55W).
4. Daytime running lamps (W21W LL-21W).
5. Direction indicators (PY21W-21W amber).

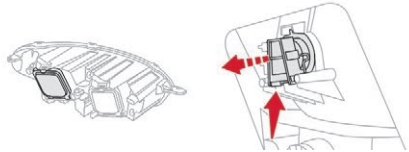
Be aware of the zone behind the right lamp (vehicle direction), which may be hot with a risk of burning (degassing hoses).

Access to bulbs



☞ Press the upper clip on the cover then tip it rearwards to remove it.

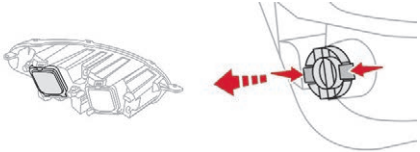
Dipped beam headlamps



☞ Press the lower clip on the connector and remove the connector and bulb assembly.
☞ Remove the bulb by pulling it and change it.

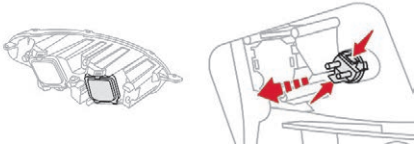
ℹ When refitting the connector and bulb in the lamp, correctly reposition the assembly in its housing until it clicks into place.

Daytime running lamps



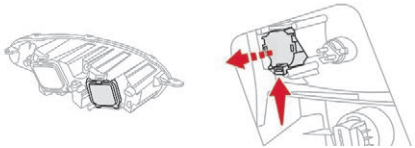
☞ Press the two side clips on the connector and remove the assembly of connector and bulb.
☞ Remove the bulb by pulling it and change it.

Sidelamps



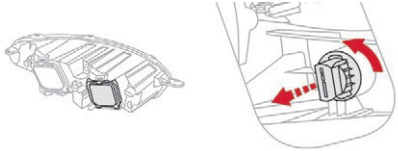
☞ Press the two side clips on the connector and remove the assembly of connector and bulb.
☞ Remove the bulb by pulling it and change it.

Main beam headlamps



☞ Press the lower clip on the connector and remove the connector and bulb assembly.
☞ Remove the bulb by pulling it and change it.

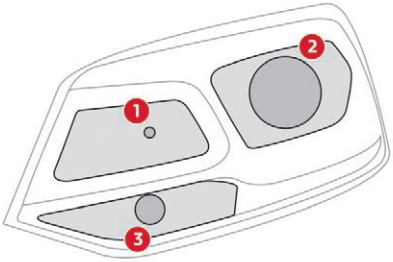
Direction indicators



☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
☞ Pull out the bulb holder and replace the faulty bulb.

ℹ Rapid flashing of a direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.

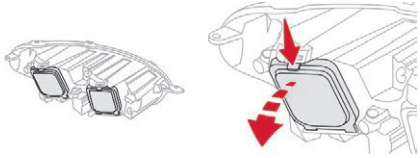
Headlamps (xenon)



1. Main beam headlamps (H1-55W).
2. Dipped beam headlamps (D8S-25W).
3. Direction indicators (PY21W-21W amber).

! Be aware of the zone behind the right lamp (vehicle direction), which may be hot with a risk of burning (degassing hoses).

Access to bulbs

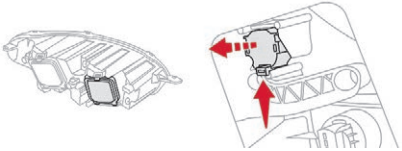


☞ Press the upper clip on the cover then tip it rearwards to remove it.

Dipped beam headlamps

ℹ Replacement of D8S xenon bulbs must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as there is a risk of electrocution.
It is recommended that both D8S bulbs be changed at the same time, in the event of the failure of one of them.

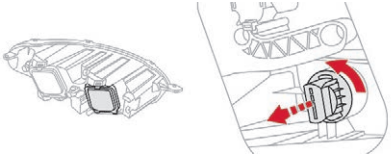
Main beam headlamps



☞ Press the lower clip on the connector and remove the connector and bulb assembly.
☞ Remove the bulb by pulling it and change it.

ℹ When refitting the connector and bulb in the lamp, correctly reposition the assembly in its housing until it clicks into place.

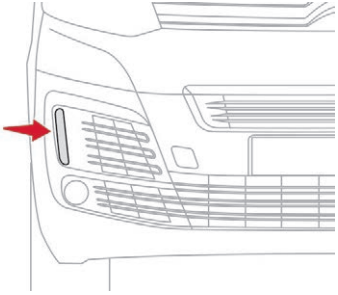
Direction indicators



☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
☞ Pull out the bulb holder and replace the faulty bulb.

ℹ Rapid flashing of a direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.

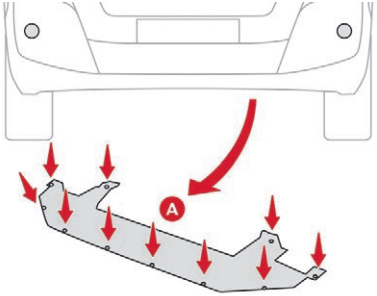
Daytime running lamps/ sidelamps



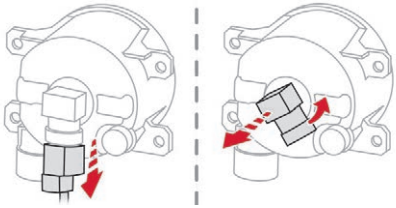
For the replacement of these bulbs, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
A replacement kit for the LEDs is available from CITROËN dealers.

Front foglamps

H11-55W



☞ Under the front bumper, unscrew the fixing screws of the deflector **A**, then remove it.



☞ Press the locking clip and disconnect the connector.

☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise and remove it.

☞ Replace the faulty bulb.

> To replace this type of bulb, you can also contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Direction indicator side repeater

- Push the repeater towards the rear and take it out.
- When refitting, engage the repeater towards the front and then bring it towards the rear.

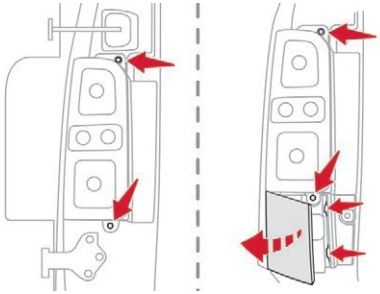
Amber coloured bulbs (direction indicators and side repeaters) must be replaced with bulbs of identical specification and colour.

Rear lamps

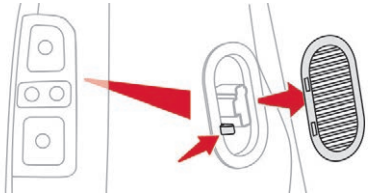
1. Brake lamps/sidelamps (P21/5W-21/5W).
2. Direction indicators (PY21W-21W amber).
3. Reversing lamps (P21W-21W).
4. Foglamps/sidelamps (P21/5W-21/4W).

> For vehicles with interior trim, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the work done.

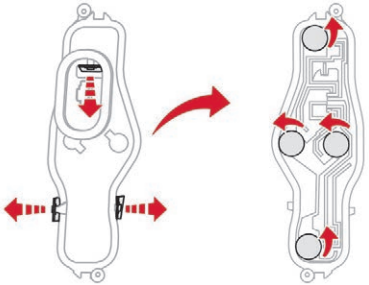
☞ Identify the faulty bulb then, depending on version, open the rear doors or the tailgate.



- With side-hinged doors, from the outside, unscrew the 2 fixing screws.
- With a tailgate, from the outside, unclip the plastic trim then tilt it outwards to remove it. Next, unscrew the 2 fixing screws.



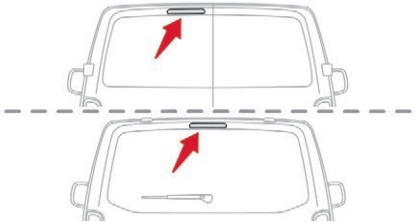
- From inside, depending on version, remove the air vent.
- While holding the lamp unit in place, press the clip located on the inner side then carefully remove the lamp unit.
- Disconnect the electrical connector.



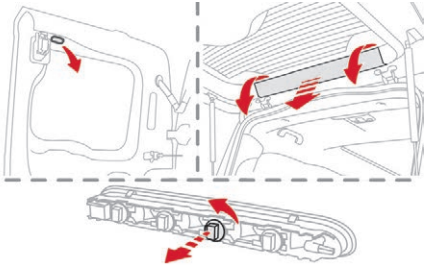
- Spread the 3 lugs slightly, then extract the bulb holder.
- Remove the faulty bulb by pressing lightly on it, then turning it a quarter turn clockwise.
- Replace the bulb.

Third brake lamp

W5W-5W



- Depending on version, open the rear left-hand door or the tailgate.

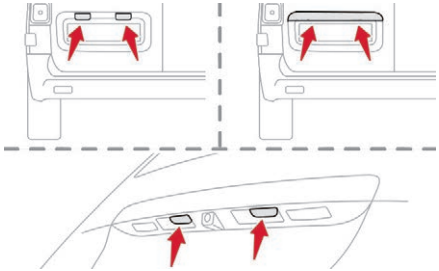


- With side-hinged doors, remove the plastic cover using a screwdriver.
- With tailgate, unclip the trim at each end by turning it upwards, then unclip the central clips to remove it.
- Working with a screwdriver through the aperture, push the lamp outwards.
- Disconnect the electrical connector and pull out the lamp.
- Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise and change the faulty bulb.

To refit, press on the lamp to clip it in place.

Number plate lamps

W5W-W



☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the cut-outs in the lens.
☞ Push it outwards to unclip it.
☞ Pull out the lens and replace the faulty bulb.

To refit it, press the lens to clip it in.

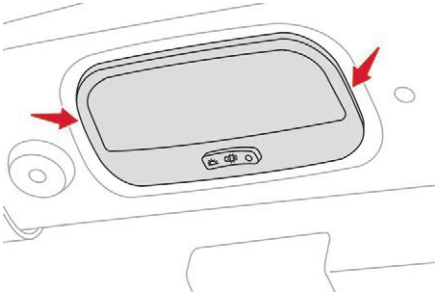
Courtesy lamps (front and rear)

LED courtesy lamps

For the replacement of these bulbs, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
A replacement kit for the LEDs is available from CITROËN dealers.

Courtesy lamps with bulb

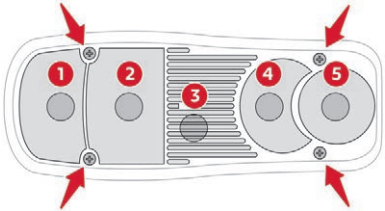
W5W-5W



☞ Unclip the lens by inserting a thin screwdriver into the slots at each side of the courtesy lamp.
☞ Remove the bulb and change it.

To refit, clip the lens in place and ensure that it is secure.

Platform cab (rear lamps)

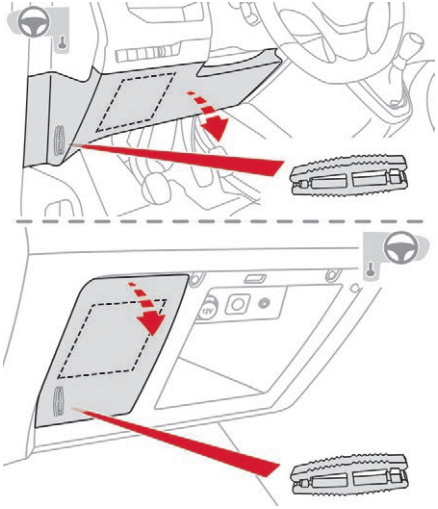


1. Direction indicators (P21W-21W).
2. Brake lamps (P21W-21W).
3. Sidelamps (R10W-10W).
4. Reversing lamps (P21W-21W).
5. Foglamps (P21W-21W).

☞ Identify the faulty bulb.
☞ Remove the 4 lens unit fixing screws and remove it.
☞ Remove the faulty bulb by pressing lightly on it, then turning it a quarter turn clockwise.
☞ Change the bulb.

Changing a fuse

Access to tools and to the dashboard fusebox



The extraction tweezers and the fuses are located behind the fusebox cover.

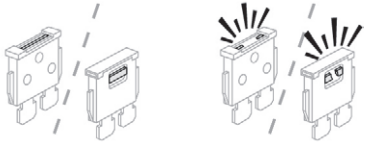
☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.
☞ Remove the cover completely.

Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse:
☞ the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified,
☞ all electrical consumers must be switched off,
☞ the vehicle must be immobilised with the ignition off,
☞ identify the faulty fuse using the existing allocation tables and diagrams.

To remove or fit a fuse, it is essential to:
☞ use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.
☞ always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour) ; using a different rating could cause faults (risk of fire).

If the fault recurs after replacing a fuse, have the electrical system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Good **Failed**

Tweezers

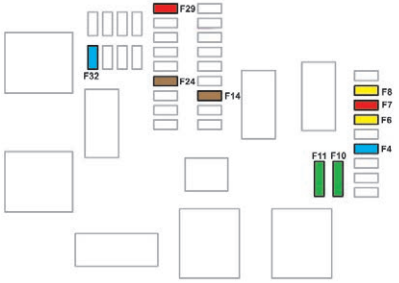
! Replacement with a fuse not shown in the allocation tables opposite may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i **Installing electrical accessories**
Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to verify that they are compatible.

! CITROËN accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with specifications, in particular when the combined power consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

i For more information on installing a towbar or equipment of the TAXI type, contact a CITROËN dealer.

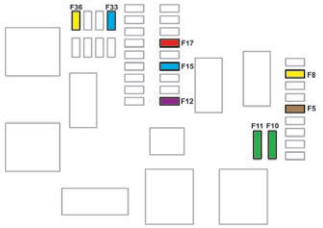
Version 1 (Eco)



The fuses described below vary according to the equipment in the vehicle.

Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F4	15	Horn.
F5	20	Front/rear screenwash pump.
F6	20	Front/rear screenwash pump.
F7	10	Rear 12 V accessory socket.
F8	20	Single or double rear wipers.
F10/F11	30	Internal/external locks, front and rear.
F14	5	Alarm, emergency and assistance calls
F24	5	Touch screen, reversing camera and parking sensors.
F29	20	Audio system, touch screen, CD player, navigation.
F32	15	Front 12 V accessory socket

Version 2 (Full)



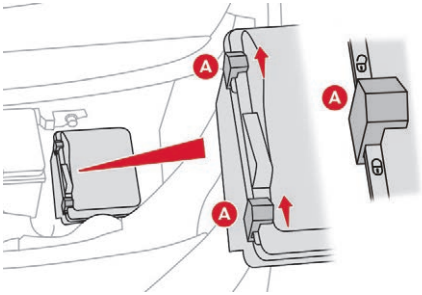
The fuses described below vary according to the equipment in the vehicle.

Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F5	5	Touch screen, reversing camera and parking sensors.
F8	20	Single or double rear wipers.
F10/F11	30	Internal/external locks, front and rear.
F12	3	Alarm.
F17	10	Rear 12 V accessory socket.
F33	15	Front 12 V accessory socket
F36	20	Audio system, touch screen, CD player, navigation.

Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.

Access to the fuses



- Release the two latches **A**.
- Remove the cover.
- Change the fuse.
- When you have finished, close the cover carefully then engage the two latches **A**, to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.

The fuses described below vary according to the equipment in the vehicle.

Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F14	**25**	Front and rear screenwash pump.
F19	**30**	Front wiper motor.
F20	**15**	Front and rear screenwash pump.
F21	**20**	Headlamp wash pump.
F22	**15**	Horn.
F23	**15**	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F24	**15**	Left-hand main beam headlamp.

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

Lead-acid starter batteries

Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead.
They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

! Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

Battery capacity

Vehicle length	Rating in Ah (Ampere hours)
XS	480
M	640
XL	720 / 800

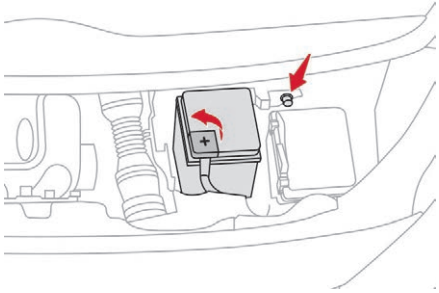
! Always replace the battery with one of equivalent specification.

Access to the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.

☞ Open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch.

☞ Secure the bonnet stay.



☞ Remove the plastic cover to access the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.

The battery (-) terminal is not accessible.

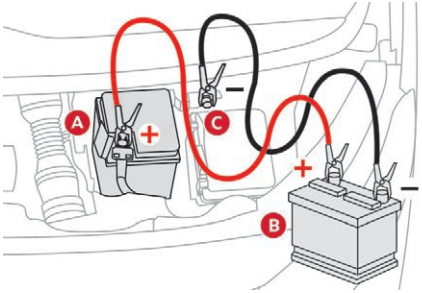
A remote earth point is provided at the front of the vehicle.

i For more information on the **Bonnet** and the **Engine**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a backup battery (external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.

! Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are not close to the moving parts of the engine (fan, belt, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



☞ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.

☞ Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of backup battery **B** or the booster.

☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of backup battery **B** or the booster (or to an earth point on the assisting vehicle).

☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.

☞ Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and leave it running for a few minutes.

☞ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.

- Wait for it to return to idle.
- Disconnect the jump leads **in reverse order**.
- Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

! To disconnect, proceed in reverse order.

i Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:
- if you only use your vehicle for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

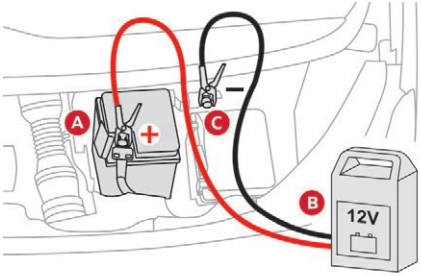
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! If you wish to charge your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

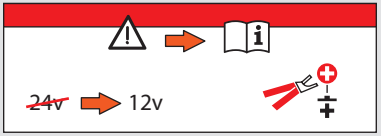
! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



- Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- If your vehicle has one, lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.
- Connect the cables of charger **B** as follows:
  - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
  - the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.

!


If this label is present, it is essential to use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

! Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion!
If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or by a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and that the container has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

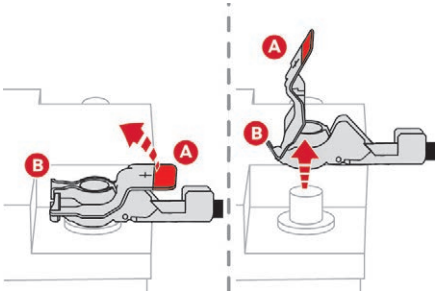
Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.
Before disconnecting the battery:
- close the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery,
- switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
- switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

At the battery, detach the (+) terminal only.

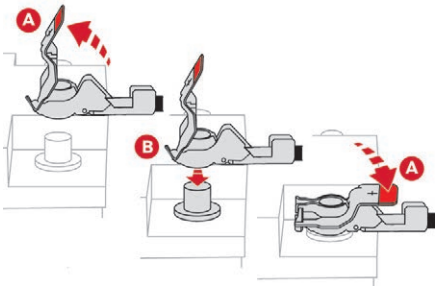
Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- Raise the lever **A** fully to release the clamp **B**.
- Remove the clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- Raise the lever **A** fully.
- Replace the open clamp **B** on the **(+)** terminal.
- Push the clamp **B** fully down.
- Lower the lever **A** to lock the clamp **B**.

! Do not force the lever as locking will be impossible if the clamp is not positioned correctly ; start the procedure again.

Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, in order to enable the electronic systems to initialise.

However, if minor problems persist following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Referring to the corresponding section, you must reset certain systems yourself, such as:
- the remote control or electronic key (depending on version),
- the electric windows,
- the electric doors,
- the date and time,
- the radio preset stations.

i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Towing

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable mechanical device.

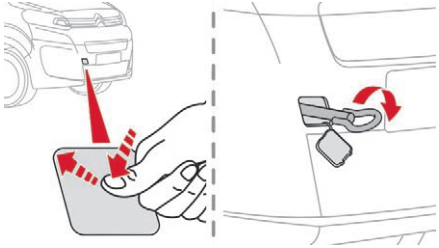
Accessing the eye

The towing eye is stowed in the tool box.

For more information on the **Tool box**, refer to the corresponding section.

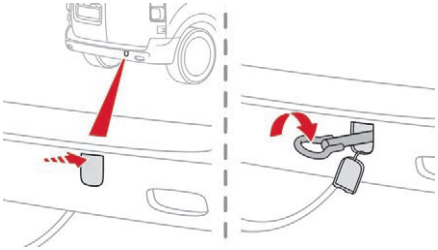
With a manual gearbox, move the gear lever into neutral.
With an automatic or electronic gearbox, place the gear selector in position **N**.
Failure to adhere to this instruction may lead to damage to braking system components and the lack of braking assistance on restarting the engine.

Towing your vehicle



- In the front bumper, slide a finger from the centre of the cover plate to the upper corner (as shown above) to unclip it.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towbar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps of the vehicle being towed.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle



- In the rear bumper, press on the cover (as shown above) to unclip it.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towbar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps of the vehicle being towed.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

General recommendations
Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm ; rope and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.
In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:
- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- when it is not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, engine running,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towbar available.

Engine technical data and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

i The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to your vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.
The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

! When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, limit the towed weight.

! Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

i If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine is allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

Engines and towed loads - Diesel EURO 4 and 5

Engines		HDi 90 BVM5		HDi 150 BVM6		HDi 150 EAT6/ EAT8		BlueHDi 150 BVM6		BlueHDi 150 EAT6/EAT8	
Gearbox		Manual 5-speed		Manual 6-speed		Automatic 6/8-speed		Manual 6-speed		Automatic 6/8-speed	
Code		DV6DU		DW10F				DW10FD			
Cubic capacity (cm³)		1,560		1,997				1,997			
Max. power: EC standard (kW)		66		110				110			
Fuel		Diesel		Diesel				Diesel			
Length		XS, M, XL (L1/L2/ L3)	M*/XL* (L2/ L3)*	XS, M, XL (L1/L2/ L3)	M*, XL* (L2/ L3)*	XS, M, XL (L1/L2/ L3)	M*, XL* (L2/ L3)*	XS, M, XL (L1/L2/ L3)	M*, XL* (L2/ L3)*	XS, M, XL (L1/L2/ L3)	M*, XL* (L2/ L3)*
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	8-9 seats	600		1,100		800		1,100		800	
Unbraked trailer (kg)	8-9 seats	600		750		750		750		750	
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	8-9 seats	25		44		32		44		32	

* Increased payload.

Engines and towed loads - Diesel EURO 6.2

Engines		BlueHDi 100 BVM6		BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM6		BlueHDi 120 S&S BVM6	
Gearboxes		**Manual 6-speed**		**Manual 6-speed**		**Manual 6-speed**	
Code		DV5RUCD - ML6V		DV5RUCD - ML6V - STT		DV5RUC - ML6V - STT	
Cubic capacity (cm³)		1,499		1,499		1,499	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)		75		75		88	
Fuel		Diesel		Diesel		Diesel	
Length		XS/M/XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*/XL* (L2/L3)*	XS/M/XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*/XL* (L2/L3)*	XS/M/XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*/XL* (L2/L3)*
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	6-7-8-9 seats	1,800	2,000	1,800	2,000	1,800	2,000
Unbraked trailer (kg)		750	750	750	750	750	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)		72	80	72	80	72	80

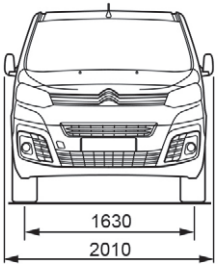
* Increased payload.

Engines		**BlueHDi 120 S&S EAT8**		**BlueHDi 150 S&S BVM6**		**BlueHDi 180 S&S EAT8**	
Gearboxes		Automatic 8-speed		Manual 6-speed		Automatic 8-speed	
Code		DW10FEU - AMN8 - STT		DW10FDU - ML6V - STT		DW10FDCU - AMN8 - STT	
Cubic capacity (cm^3)		1,997		1,997		1,997	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)		90		100		110	
Fuel		Diesel		Diesel		Diesel	
Length		XS/M/XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*/XL* (L2/L3)*	XS/M/XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*/XL* (L2/L3)*	XS/M/XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*/XL* (L2/L3)*
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	6-7-8-9 seats	2,300	2,500	2,300	2,500	2,300	2,500
Unbraked trailer (kg)		750	750	750	750	750	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)		92	100	92	100	92	100

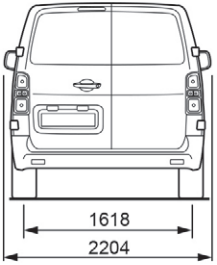
Dimensions (mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.

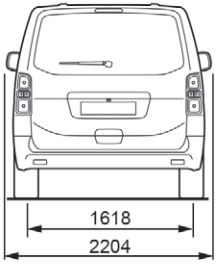
Mirrors folded



Side-hinged doors

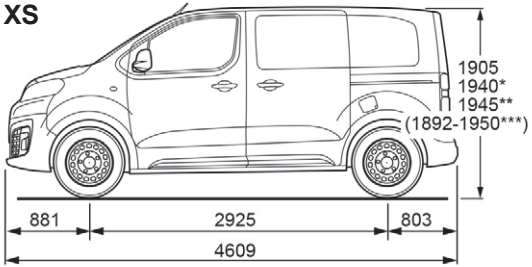


Tailgate

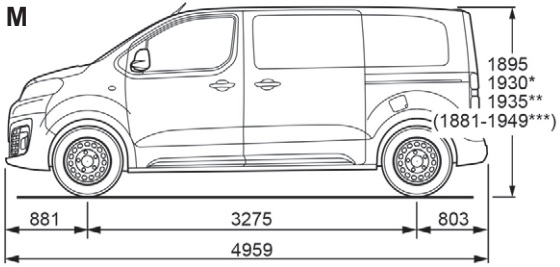


* Increased payload.
** Increased payload with high body.
*** Depending on the country of sale.

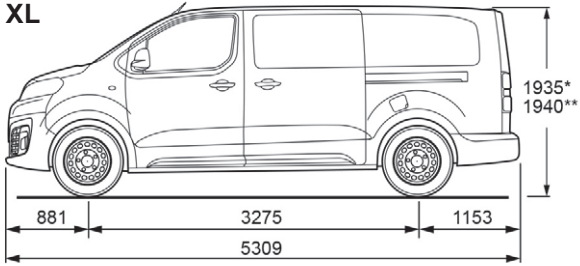
XS

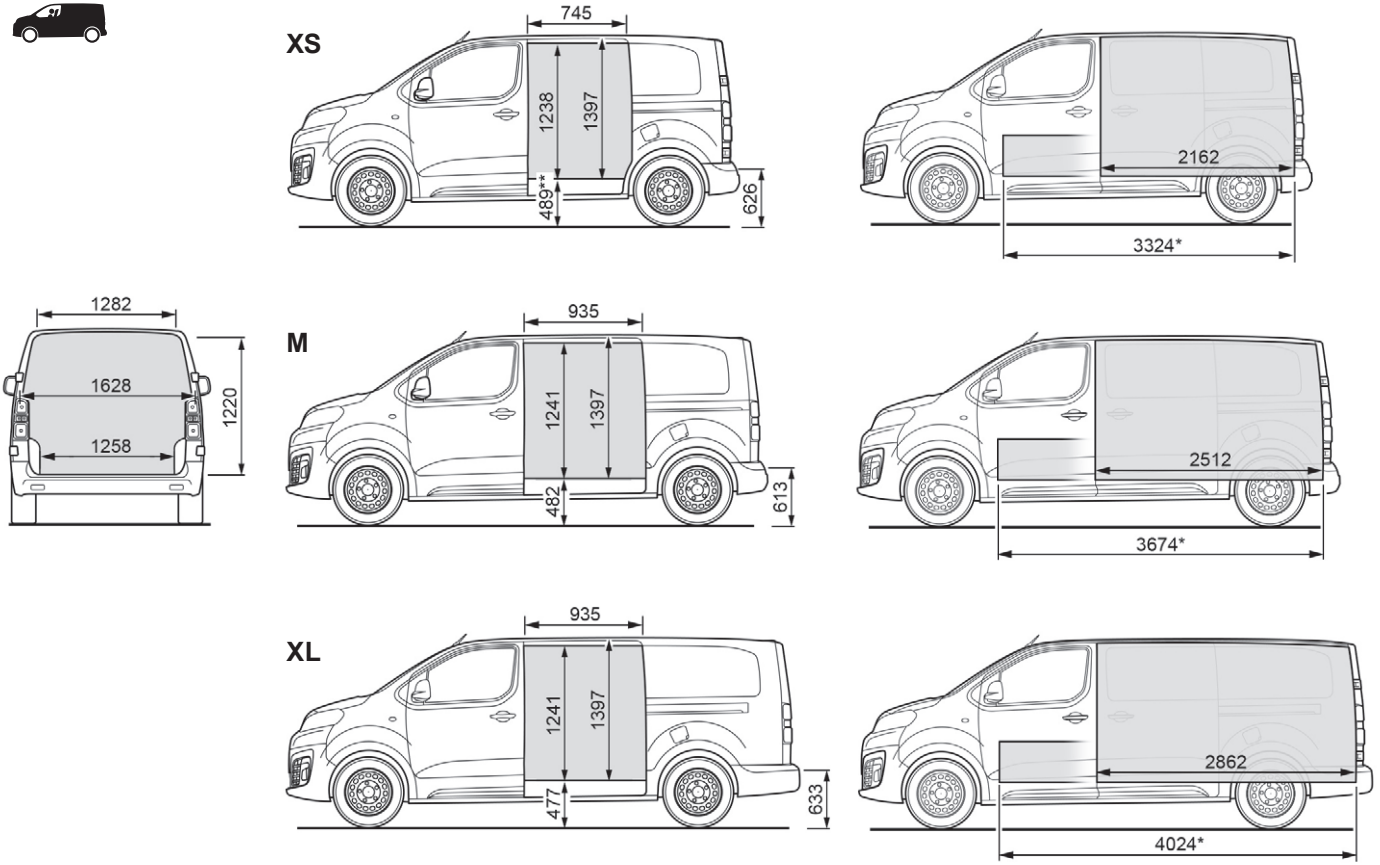


M



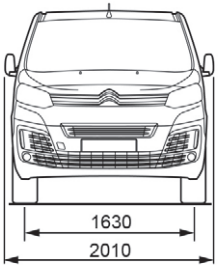
XL



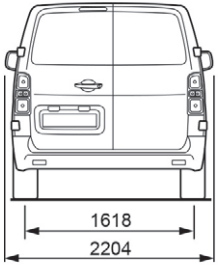


* With Moduwork, flap removed.
** Vehicle empty and not loaded.

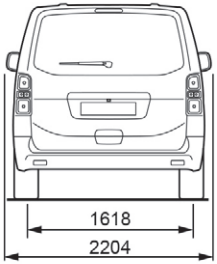
Mirrors folded



Side-hinged doors

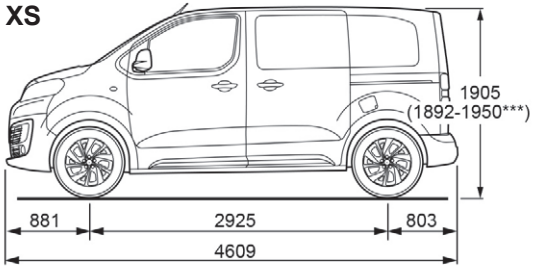


Tailgate

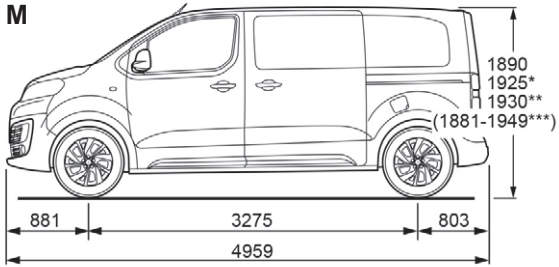


* Increased payload.
** Increased payload with high body.
*** Depending on the country of sale.

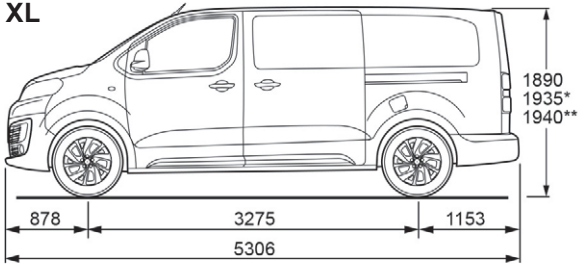
XS



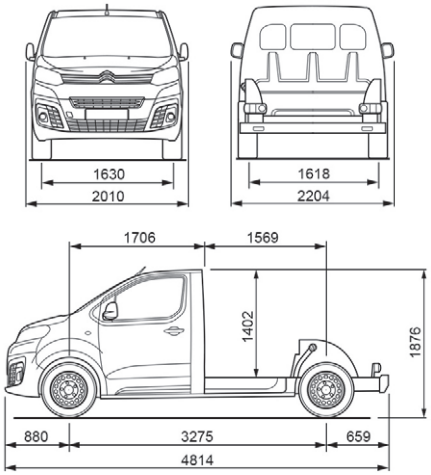
M



XL

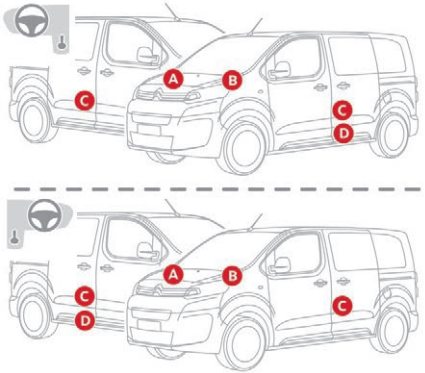


Cab floor



Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification and research of your vehicle.

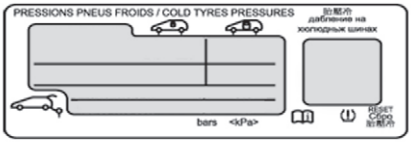


A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the bonnet.
This number is engraved on the bodywork structure.

B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the dashboard.
The number is on a label, visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.
This tamperproof label is affixed to the centre pillar.
It bears the following information:
- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European Whole Vehicle Type Approval number,
- the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN),
- the gross vehicle weight (GVW),
- the gross train weight (GTW),
- the maximum weight on the front axle,
- the maximum weight on the rear axle.

D. Tyres/paint code label.

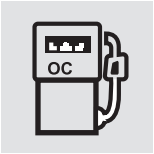


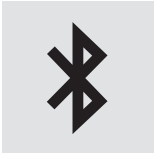
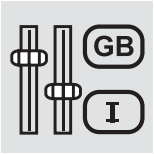
This label is affixed to the driver's door aperture.
It bears the following information about the tyres:
- the tyre pressures, unladen and laden,
- the tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices,
- the spare tyre pressure.

It also indicates the paint colour code.

> The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting inflation pressure.

Bluetooth® audio system



Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	2
Menus	4
Radio	4
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	6
Media	7
Telephone	10
Frequently asked questions	14

The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Your audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. All work on the system must be carried out exclusively by a dealer or qualified workshop, to avoid any risk of electrocution, fire or mechanical faults.

To avoid discharging the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes if the engine is not running.

First steps

Press: On/Off.
Rotate: adjust volume.

SRC / Short press: change audio source (radio ; USB ; AUX (if equipment connected) ; CD ; streaming).
Long press: display the **Telephone** menu (if a telephone is connected).

Adjust audio settings:
Front/rear fader ; left/right balance ; bass/treble ; loudness ; audio ambience.
Activation/Deactivation of automatic volume adjustment (linked to the speed of the vehicle).

LIST **Radio:**
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

Select the screen display mode, between:
Date ; Audio functions ; Trip computer ; Telephone.

OK Confirm or display contextual menu.

1 Buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a radio station.

Radio:
Automatic step by step search up/down for radio stations.
Media:
Select previous/next CD, USB, streaming track.
Scroll in a list.

Radio:
Manual step by step search up/down for radio stations.
Select previous/next MP3 folder.
Media:
Select previous/next folder/genre/artist/playlist on the USB device.
Scroll in a list.

Abandon the current operation.
Go up one level (menu or folder).

MENU Access to the main menu.

TA Activate/Deactivate TA function (traffic announcements).
Long press: select type of announcement.

BAND Selection of FM/DAB/AM wavebands.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls - Type 1

Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous / next track.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

LIST

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

SRC /

Other than telephone call:
Short press: changing audio source (radio ; USB ; AUX (if equipment connected) ; CD ; streaming), confirmation if the **"Telephone"** menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.

OK Confirm a selection.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.

Mute / Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2

MENU Access to the main menu.

+ Increase volume.

Mute / Restore the sound.

– Decrease volume.

SRC /

Other than telephone call:
Short press: changing audio source (radio ; USB ; AUX (if equipment connected) ; CD ; streaming), confirmation if the **"Telephone"** menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.

Start voice recognition on your smartphone via the system.

LIST

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous / next track.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Press the thumbwheel: confirm.

Menus

Depending on version.

"**Multimedia**": Media settings, Radio settings.

"**Telephone**": Call, Directory management, Telephone management, Hang up.

"**Trip computer**".

"**Maintenance**": Diagnosis, Warning log, etc.

"**Connections**": Manage connections, search for devices.

"**Personalisation-configuration**": Define the vehicle parameters, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.

MENU Press the "**MENU**" button.

Move from one menu to another.

OK Enter a menu.

Radio

Selecting a station

SRC / Press the **SOURCE** button repeatedly and select the radio.

BAND Press this button to select a waveband (FM / AM / DAB).

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up / down for radio frequencies.

LIST Press this button to display the list of stations received locally.
To update this list, press for more than two seconds. The sound is cut while updating.

RDS

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

If RDS is not available, the RDS symbol appears struck out in the screen.

! The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Short procedure

In "**Radio**" mode, press the **OK** button to activate or deactivate RDS directly.

Long procedure

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**Audio functions**".

OK Press **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select the "**FM waveband preferences**" function.

OK Press **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**Frequency tracking (RDS)**".

OK Press **OK**, RDS is displayed on the screen.

Play TA messages

! The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages.
To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, etc.) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

! Take care when increasing the volume while listening to TA messages. The volume may prove too high on return to the original audio source.

TA Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.

Receiving INFO messages

i The INFO function gives priority to TA alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, etc.) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

TA Make a long press on this button to display the list of categories.

▲ ▼ Select or deselect categories.

OK Activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

Display TEXT INFOS

i Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the station's current programme or song.

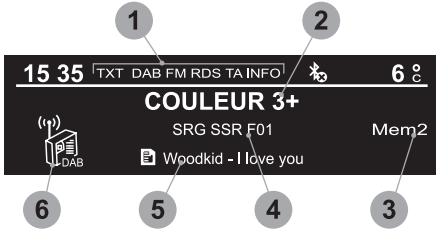
OK When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

▲ ▼ Select "**RadioText (TXT) display**" and confirm **OK** to save.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Depending on version

ℹ If the current DAB radio station is not available on FM, "DAB FM" is struck out.



1 Options display: if active but not available, the display will be struck out.

2 Display of the name of the current station.

3 Preset stations, buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: memorise a radio station.

4 Display the name of the “multiplex” service being used, also called "ensemble".

5 Display RadioText (TXT) for the current radio station.

6 Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

ℹ When changing region, an update of the list of preset radio stations is advisable.

LIST Display of the list of all radio stations and "multiplexes".

Terrestrial digital radio

ℹ Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO).
The different "multiplex / ensemble” services offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

BAND Change of band (FM1, FM2, DAB, etc.)

◀◀ ▶▶ Change of station within the same "multiplex / ensemble".

▲ ▼ Starting of a search for the previous / next "multiplex / ensemble".

TA Long press: selection of the categories of news desired among Transport, News, Entertainment and Special Flash (available depending on the station).

ℹ When the radio station is displayed in the screen , press "**OK**" to display the contextual menu.
(Frequency search (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, etc.)

DAB / FM station tracking

"DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.
When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue FM station (if it exists).
When the "DAB / FM auto tracking" is active, the DAB station will be selected automatically.

If "DAB / FM auto tracking" tracking is enabled, there is a lag of a few seconds when the system switches to the analogue FM station sometimes with a change in volume.

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

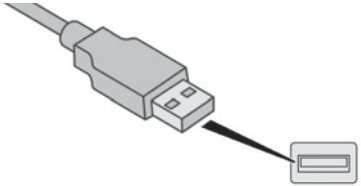
Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.

Select "**DAB / FM auto tracking**" and confirm.

If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on FM ("**DAB/FM**" option struck out), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
The system changes automatically to "USB" source.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
Playlists are updated every time a new USB memory stick is connected.

When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically.

Play mode

The play modes available are:
- **Normal**: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- **Random**: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- **Random on all media**: all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.

- **Repeat**: the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

OK Press this button to display the contextual menu for the Media function.

▲ ▼ Press this button to select the chosen play mode.

OK Press this button to confirm.

The choice made is displayed at the top of the screen.

Choosing a track to play

◀◀ ▶▶ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track.

▲ ▼ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next folder.

File classification

LIST Make a long press on this button to display the different classifications.

◀ ▶ ▲ ▼ Select by "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**". Depending on availability and type of device used.

OK Press **OK** to select the desired classification, then press **OK** again to confirm.

Playing files

LIST Make a short press on this button to display the chosen classification.

◀ ▶ ▲ ▼ Navigate in the list using the left / right and up / down buttons.

OK Confirm the selection by pressing **OK**.

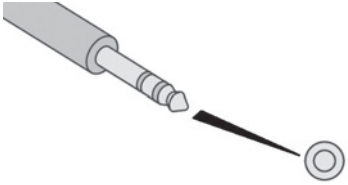
◀◀ ▶▶ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track in the list. Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

▲ ▼ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**"* in the list.

* Depending on availability and the type of device used.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model / depending on equipment)



Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

ℹ Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

SRC / Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**AUX**".

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system. Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

! Do not connect a device to both the Jack auxiliary socket and the USB port at the same time.

CD player

Insert circular compact discs only.
Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.
Insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

! External CD players connected via the USB port are not recognised by the system.

SRC / To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".

Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Playing an MP3 compilation

Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player.
The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

! On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels.
However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.
The folder structure is not observed during playback.
All of the files are displayed on a single level.

SRC / To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".

Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.

Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.

Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the vehicle's loudspeakers.

Connect the telephone.
(Refer to the "**Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone**" section).

SRC / Activate the streaming source by pressing **SOURCE.**
In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

Audio files can be selected using the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls. The contextual information can be displayed in the screen.
If the telephone supports the function. The audio quality depends on the quality of transmission by the telephone.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists).

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The CD player can play files with “.mp3”, “.wma”, “.wav” and “.aac” file extensions, with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.
It also supports TAG mode (ID3 tag, WMA TAG).
No other file types (“.mp”4, etc.) can be read.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

Via the USB port, the system can play audio files with the extension ".mp3”, “.wma”, “.wav”, “.cbr”, “.vbr" with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.

No other file types (“.mp4”, etc.) can be read.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

File names should have fewer than 20 characters, avoiding special characters (e.g. « ? ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2, or Joliet, if possible, when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

! Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used.
Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

Procedure from the system

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Connections**".

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Select "**Search for a device**".

OK Confirm with **OK.**

A window is displayed with a search in progress message.

In the list of devices detected, select a telephone to pair. Only one telephone can be paired at a time.

Completing the pairing

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not restricted.
A message appears in the screen confirming the pairing.

Information and advice

The "**Telephone**" menu gives access to the following functions in particular: "**Directory**", if your telephone equipment is fully compatible, "**Call log**", "**View paired devices**".
Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or confirm access by the system to each of these functions.

i Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, more help, etc.).

Manage connections

i The telephone connection automatically includes hands free operation and audio streaming.
The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone.
Both profiles may connect by default.

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Connections**".

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Select "**Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired devices is displayed.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Indicates that a device is connected.

i A number indicates the profile of the connection with the system:
- 1 for media or 1 for telephone.
- 2 for media and telephone.

Indicates connection of the audio steaming profile.

Indicates the hands-free telephone profile.

Select a telephone.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Then select and confirm:
- "**Connect telephone**" / "**Disconnect telephone**": to connect / disconnect the telephone or the hands-free kit only.
- "**Connect media player**" / "**Disconnect media player**": to connect / disconnect streaming only.
- "**Connect telephone + media player**" / "**Disconnect telephone + media player**": to connect / disconnect the telephone (hands-free kit and streaming).
- "**Delete connection**": to delete the pairing.

When you delete a pairing in the system, remember to delete it from your telephone as well.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Select the "**YES**" tab in the screen using the buttons.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

SRC / Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.

Making a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.

Select "**Call**".

Select "**Dial**".

Or

Select "**Directory**".

Or

Select "**Calls list**".

OK Confirm with **OK.**

SRC / Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumb wheel.

Ending a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.

Select "**End call**".

Confirm with **OK** to end the call.

SRC / During a call, press one of these buttons for more than two seconds.

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.

i With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system.
Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Managing calls

OK During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

End call

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu, select "**Hang up**" to end the call.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Microphone off

(so that the caller cannot hear)

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu:
- select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
- deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Telephone mode

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu:
- select "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone (for example, to leave the vehicle while continuing a conversation).
- deselect "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically and sound returned to the system (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).
In some cases, the Telephone mode must be activated from the telephone.

Interactive voice response

▲ ▼ From the contextual menu, select "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Consultation call

▲ ▼ From the contextual menu, select "**Switch**" and validate to return to a call left on hold.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Directory

▲ ▼ To access the directory, press and hold **SRC/TEL**.

▲ ▼ Select "**Directory**" to see the list of contacts.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

MENU To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select "**Telephone**" and confirm.
Select "**Directory management**" and confirm.
You can:
- "**Consult an entry**",
- "**Delete an entry**",
- "**Delete all entries**".

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Voice recognition

This function allows you to use your smartphone's voice recognition via the system.

To start voice recognition, depending on the type of steering mounted controls:

Make a long press on the end of the lighting control stalk.

OR

Press this button.

Voice recognition requires the use of a compatible smartphone first connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the audio system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging the vehicle's battery.	Turn the ignition on to increase the charge of the battery.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction in volume or the CD play stopping.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD, etc.).	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source (radio, CD, etc.).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance and Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.

The preset stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND button to return to the waveband (FM, FM2, DAB, AM) on which the stations are preset.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the RDS function to allow the system to see if a more powerful transmitter is within the geographic area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or in an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.	Switch off the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral device may not be sufficiently charged.	Charge the battery of the peripheral device.
The message "USB device error" is displayed in the screen.	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The USB memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the USB memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - Due to insufficient quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used in scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
I am unable to play the music files on my smartphone via the USB port.	Depending on the smartphone, access by the audio system to music on the smartphone may have to be approved on the latter.	Manual activate the MTP profile on the smartphone (USB settings menu).

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I am unable to access my voicemail.	Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.	Call the voicemail, via the telephone menu, using the number provided by your operator.
I am unable to access my directory of contacts.	Check the compatibility of your telephone.	
	You did not give access to your contacts when pairing the telephone.	Accept or confirm access by the system to the contacts on your telephone.
I am unable to continue a conversation when getting into my vehicle.	Telephone mode is activated.	Deselect telephone mode to transfer the call to the vehicle.
I am unable to pair my telephone by Bluetooth.	Telephones (models, versions of operating systems) have their own specific aspects in the pairing procedure and some telephones are not compatible.	Before starting the pairing procedure, delete the pairing of the telephone from the system **and** of the system from the telephone, so as to see the compatibility of the telephones.

CITROËN Connect Radio

Multimedia audio system - Applications - Bluetooth® telephone

Contents

First steps	1
Steering mounted controls	2
Menus	3
Applications	5
Radio	5
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	7
Media	8
Telephone	10
Settings	14
Frequently asked questions	16

The various functions and settings described differ according to the version and configuration of the vehicle.

For safety reasons and because they require continued attention on the part of the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:

- Using a smartphone.
- Pairing a Bluetooth mobile phone to the hands-free Bluetooth system of the car radio.
- Smartphone connection operations for CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto (certain applications interrupt their display when the vehicle starts to move again).
- The configuration of profiles.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in the vehicle.
The display of the message **Energy Economy Mode** signals that a change to standby is imminent.

The link below gives access to the OSS (Open Source Software) code for the system.
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

At all times it is possible to display the rolling menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

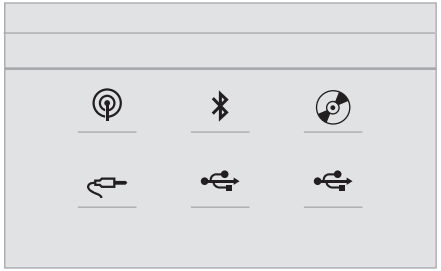
All of the touch areas of the screen are white. For pages with multiple tabs at the bottom of the screen, it is possible to switch between pages either by tapping the tab for the desired page, or by using a finger, sliding the pages to the left or to the right.
Press in the grey zone to go back up a level or to confirm.

Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper bar of the touch screen:
- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Reminder of the privacy information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.

Selection of the audio source (depending on equipment):
- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
- CD player (depending on equipment).



i In the "Settings" menu it is possible to create a profile for just one person or a group of people with shared interests, with the possibility of entering multiple settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, etc.) ; these settings are taken into account automatically.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes.
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls - Type 1

Radio:
Select the previous/next preset radio station.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous/next track.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

Change audio source (radio ; USB ; AUX if equipment connected ; CD ; streaming).

Confirm a selection.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.

Mute/restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2

Voice commands:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

SRC **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call ; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection ; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST **Radio**: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

Applications

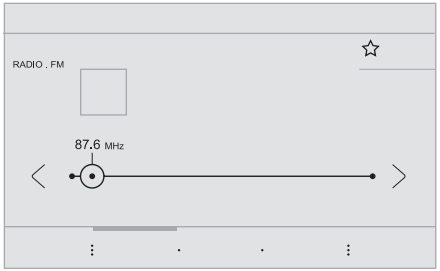
Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

Access configurable equipment.

Radio Media

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

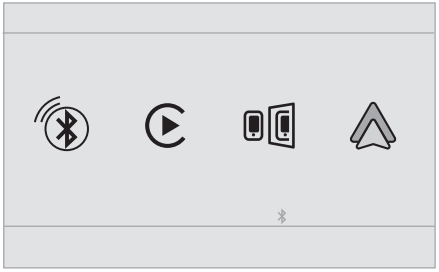
Select an audio source or radio station.



Telephone

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

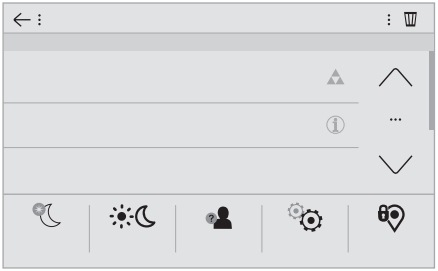
Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®. Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



Settings

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

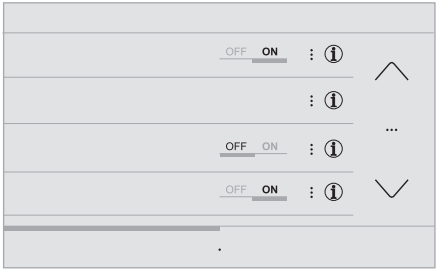
Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



Driving

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

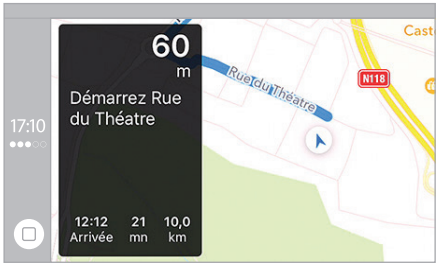
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



Navigation

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

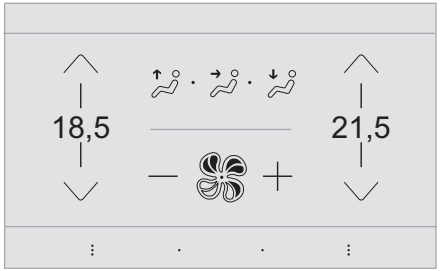
Configure the navigation and select your destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



Air conditioning

Depending on equipment / Depending on version.

Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB socket.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff ; .gif ; .jpg/jpeg ; .bmp ; .png.

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Photos**".

Select a folder.

Select an image to view.

Press this button to display the details of the photo.

Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "SMS".

Select the "SMS" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to search and select a recipient.

Select the "Quick messages" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to write a new message.

Press the basket alongside the selected message to delete it.

Press this button alongside the selected message to display the secondary page.

Press this button to edit and modify the existing text.

Press this button to write a new message.

Press the basket to delete the message.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the slider for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

MHz
KHz

Press the frequency.

Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This behaviour is normal in the propagation of radio waves and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

Changing waveband

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

FM Press "**Band**" to change waveband.

Press in the grey area to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.

Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press "**Preset**".

Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Activate/deactivate "**RDS**".

Press in the grey zone to confirm.

i RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

i The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Activate/deactivate "**INFO**".

Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Playing TA messages

! The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages.
To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Activate/deactivate "**TA**".

Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Audio settings

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Audio settings**".

Select the "**Tone**" or "**Balance**" or "**Sound**" or "**Voice**" or "**Ringtones**" tab to configure the audio settings.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

i In the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience** audio settings, as well as **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.
In the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.
In the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

! The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

i On-board audio: the Arkamys Sound Staging© optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality sound. The different "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB band**".

Press in the grey zone to confirm.

FM-DAB tracking

i "DAB" does not cover 100 % of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB tracking**".

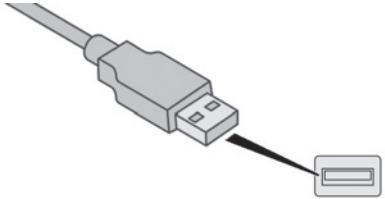
Press in the grey zone to confirm.

If "FM-DAB tracking" is activated, there may be a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM, or if the "FM-DAB tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB socket



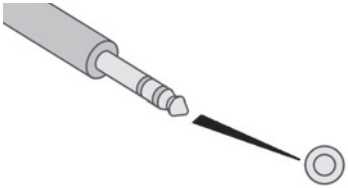
Insert the USB memory stick in the USB socket or connect the USB device to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
Management of the controls is via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Choose the source.

Bluetooth®streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of the system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts). It is also possible to use a classification structured in the form of a library.
The default classification used is by artist.
To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via the USB sockets. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Device management is via the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
Sampling frequencies supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is recommended that file names are less than 20 characters long and do not contain any special characters (e.g. « » ? . ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2, or Joliet, if possible, when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows users to display applications adapted to the CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto technology of the smartphone on the vehicle screen. For the CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must be activated on the smartphone beforehand.
For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work, it is essential in all cases that the smartphone is unlocked.
As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, as well as the date and time of the smartphone and of the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's national website.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

i The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®

When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**TEL**" button to display the secondary page.

Press "**MirrorLink**™" to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to the smartphone and compatible with the MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of the network.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or

If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**TEL**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode, a change of source will have to be done manually.

It is possible to go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Android Auto smartphone connection

On the smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**Android Auto**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.

When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**TEL**" button to display the secondary page.

Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of the network.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press "**Bluetooth search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

Depending on the type of telephone, the option is given to accept or not accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**TEL**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Audio streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Internet data**".

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone.
All three profiles may connect by default.

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the user guide for the telephone and with the service provider for the available services.

i The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones

i This function allows the connection or disconnection of a device as well as the deletion of a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**TEL**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it.
Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And

+2s Make a long press

on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or

Press "**End call**".

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Parking the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or make a long press

on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or

Make a long press

on the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone ; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.

Press the arrows or move the slider to set the ring volume.

Settings

Setting the profiles

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press this button to activate the profile.

Press the back arrow again to confirm.

00.0

Press this button to reinitialise the profile selected.

Adjust brightness

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press **Brightness**.

Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).

Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Modifying system settings

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**System configuration**".

Press the "**Units**" tab to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Press the "**Factory settings**" tab to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Press the "**System info**" tab to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Press the "**Privacy**" tab,

or

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Privacy**" to activate or deactivate the privacy data mode.

Activate or deactivate:
- "**No sharing (data, vehicle position)**".
- "**Data sharing only**"
- "**Sharing data and the vehicle position**"

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".

Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press "**Animation**".

Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Animated transitions**".

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Select the language

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Language**" to change the language.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to save the time.

Press this button to define the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).

Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

Press the back arrow to save the settings.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".

Press this button to define the date.

Press the back arrow to save the date.

Select the display format of the date.

Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation" is deactivated.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the radio station being listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station being listened to or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper banner to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) blocks reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list.	Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.
	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song, for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	It is possible to check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).
Android Auto and CarPlay do not work.	Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.	Use authentic USB cables to ensure compatibility.
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close windows, reduce ventilation, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Change the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the equalizer setting is deselected. When changing the equalizer setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Start the engine to increase the charge of the battery.

CITROËN Connect Nav

GPS navigation - Applications - Multimedia audio system - Bluetooth® telephone

Contents

First steps	1
Steering mounted controls	2
Menus	3
Voice commands	4
Navigation	12
Connected navigation	14
Applications	17
Radio	20
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	22
Media	22
Telephone	24
Settings	28
Frequently asked questions	30

The various functions and settings described differ according to the version and configuration of the vehicle.

For safety reasons and because they require continued attention on the part of the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition switched off:
- Using a smartphone.
- Pairing a Bluetooth mobile phone to the hands-free Bluetooth system of the audio system.
- Smartphone connection operations for CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto (certain applications interrupt their display when the vehicle starts to move again).
- Watching a video (the video stops when the vehicle starts to move again).
- The configuration of profiles.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in the vehicle.
The display of the message **Energy Economy Mode** signals that a change to standby is imminent.

The link below gives access to the OSS (Open Source Software) code for the system.
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the menu buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons to access the rolling menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

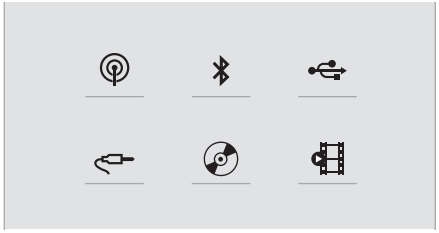
Display the rolling menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the back arrow to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the side bars or in the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment):
- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the "Notifications" of messages, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.

Selection of the audio source (depending on equipment):
- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
- CD player (depending on equipment).
- Video (depending on equipment).



i Using the "Settings" menu, create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common interests, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.) ; these settings are taken into account automatically.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes.
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Voice commands:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press, system voice commands.
Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

SRC

Media (short press): change the multimedia source.

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call ; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection ; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

Connected navigation

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.

Applications

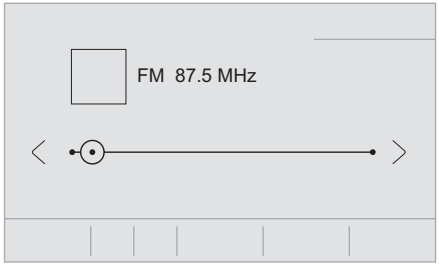
Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ (available depending on the country) or Android Auto.
Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

Radio Media

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

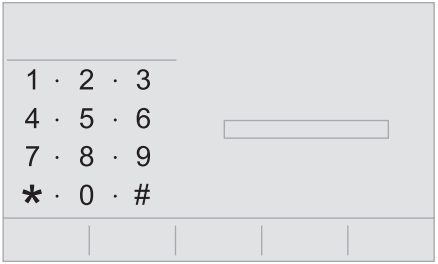
Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.



Telephone

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

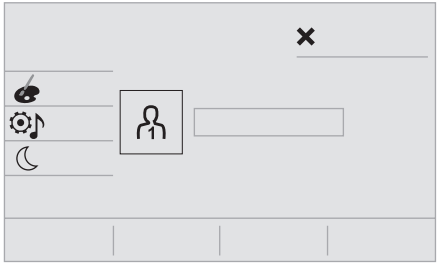
Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.



Settings

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

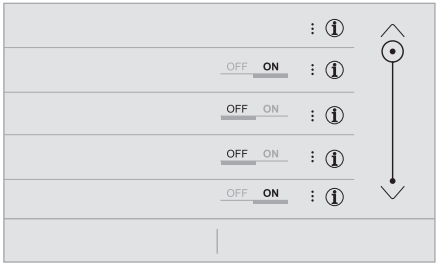
Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



Vehicle

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

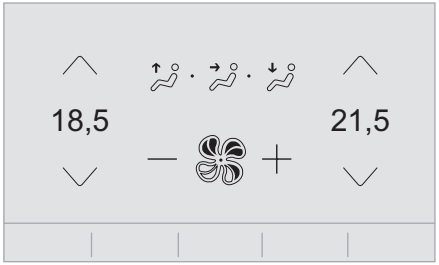
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



Air conditioning

Depending on equipment / Depending on version.

Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



Voice commands

Steering mounted controls

Voice commands:
Voice commands can be made from any screen page after a short press on the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment), as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please follow these recommendations:
- **use natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.**
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and sunroof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version).
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers not to speak.

First steps

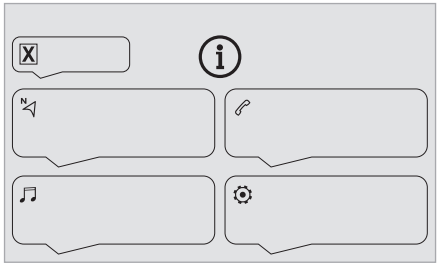
Example of a "voice command" for navigation:
"Navigate to address 11 regent street, London"
Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:
"Play artist Madonna"
Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:
"Call David Miller" "

! The voice commands, with a choice of 17 languages (Arabic, Brazilian, Czech, Danish, Dutch, English, Farsi, French, German, Italian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish, Turkish), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system.
For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.
Example: Guide to / Navigate to / Go to / ...
The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

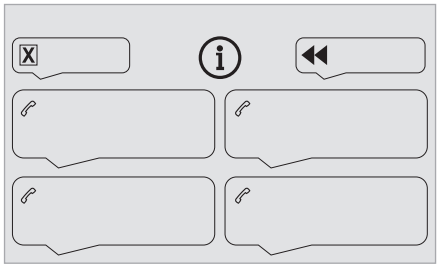
Information - Using the system

Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

When the voice commands are activated by briefly pressing the button, help is displayed on the touch screen, offering various menus and allowing interaction with the system by voice.



After a menu has been selected, some commands are proposed.



Global voice commands

Voice commands	Help messages
	"There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls". "
	Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
Set dialogue mode as novice - expert	
Select user 1 / Select profile John	
Increase temperature	
Decrease temperature	

"Navigation" voice commands

Voice commands	Help messages
Navigate home	To plan a route, say "navigate to" followed by the address, the contact name or an intersection. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", "navigate to contact, John Miller", or "navigate to intersection of Regent Street, London". You can specify if it's a preferred address, or a Point of Interest. For example, say "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", or "navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London". Or, you can just say, "navigate home". To see Points of Interest on a map, you can say things like "show POI hotels in Banbury". For more information say "help with points of interest" or "help with route guidance". To choose a destination, say something like "navigate to line three" or "select line two". If you can't find the destination but the street's right, say for example "select the street in line three". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Navigate to work	
Navigate to preferred address, Tennis club	
Navigate to contact, John Miller	
Navigate to address 11 regent street, London	
Tell me the remaining distance	You can say "stop" or "resume route guidance". To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "remaining distance" or "arrival time". To learn more commands, try saying "help with navigation".
Tell me the remaining time	
Tell me the arrival time	
Stop route guidance	

Show POI "hotel" at the destination	To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury", "show nearby parking", "show hotel at the destination" or "show petrol station along the route". If you prefer to navigate directly to a point of interest, you can say "navigate to nearby petrol station". If you feel you are not being well understood, try to say the word "POI" in front of the point of interest. For example say "navigate to POI restaurant at the destination". To choose a POI, say something like "select line 2". If you've searched for a Point of Interest and don't see the one you're after, you can filter further by saying something like "select POI in line 2", or "select the city in line 3". You can also scroll through the list by saying "next page" or "previous page".
Show nearby POI petrol station"	
Navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London	
Navigate to POI petrol station along the route	

Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands

Voice commands	Help messages
Turn on source radio - Streaming Bluetooth - …	You can select an audio source by saying "turn on source" followed by the device name. For example, "turn on source, Streaming Bluetooth", or "turn on source, radio". Use the command "play" to specify the type of music you'd like to hear. You can choose between "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
Tune to channel BBC Radio 2	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say for example "tune to preset number five".
Tune to 98.5 FM	
Tune to preset number five	
What's playing?	To choose what you'd like to play, start by saying "play" and then the item. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play line 3" or "select line 2". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Play song Hey Jude	I'm not sure what you'd like to play. Please say "play" and then a song title, an album title, or an artist name. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play artist Madonna" or "play album Thriller". To select a line number from the display, say "select line two". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Play artist Madonna	
Play album Thriller	

Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

If there is no telephone connected via Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

Voice commands	Help messages
Call David Miller'' *	To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 107776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting". To choose a contact, say something like "select line three". To move around the list say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Call voicemail*	
Display calls*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

"Text message" voice commands

If there is no telephone connected via Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

The "Text messages" voice commands function allows you to dictate and send an SMS.
Dictate the text, taking care to make a short pause between each word.
At the end of the operation, the voice recognition system will automatically create an SMS.

Voice commands	Help messages
Send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late	From the list of quick messages, say the name of the one you'd like to send. To move around the list you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Send SMS to John Miller, I'm just arriving	Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Send SMS to David Miller at the office, don't wait for me	
Listen to most recent message*	To hear your last message, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choice of a destination

To a new destination

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Enter address**".

Select the "**Country**".

Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.

OK Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And/or

Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

Zoom out/in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

In order to be able to use the navigation, it is necessary to fill in the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" on the virtual keyboard or take it from the list in "**Contact**" or in the "**History**" of addresses.

Without confirmation of the house number, the navigation system will show one of the ends of the street.

To a recent destination

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

Select "**Position**" to visualise the arrival point geographically.

To "My home" or "My work"

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**" tab.

Select "**My home**".

Or

Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

To a contact

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list to start navigation.

To points of interest (POI)

Points of interest (POI) are listed in different categories.

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Points of interest**".

Select the "**Travel**", or "**Leisure**" or "**Commercial**" or "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or

Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.

OK

Press "**OK**" to start calculation of the route.

To a point on the map

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.

Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.

Press this button to start navigation.

Or

Press this button to save the address displayed.

A long press on an item opens a list of POIs nearby.

To GPS coordinates

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Touch the screen with a finger to go to the next image.

Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select the desired country or region by zooming.

Press this button to display or enter the GPS coordinates.

A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.

Choose the type of coordinates:
DMS for: Degrees, Minutes, Seconds.
DD for: Degrees, Decimals.

Press this button to start navigation.

Or

Press this button to save the address displayed.

OR

Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And

Press this button to enter the value for "**Longitude**" using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time.
The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Connected navigation

Depending on version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

Network connection provided by the vehicle

OR

Network connection provided by the user

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's national website.

Connected navigation connection

Network connection provided by the vehicle

The system is automatically connected to the internet, to the connected services, and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

Network connection provided by the user

Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

USB connection

Connect a USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

Bluetooth connection

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Applications" section).

Wi-Fi connection

Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect.

This function is only available if it has been activated either via the "Notifications" or via the "Applications" menu.

Press "**Notifications**".

Select Wi-Fi to activate it.

OR

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

Select the "**Secured**" or "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

Select a network.

Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".

Press "**OK**" to start the connection.

Usage restrictions:
- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.

With the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services will be available.

The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.
A Connected Services pack:
- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI local search.

A Danger zone pack (as an option).

Processes and standards are constantly changing ; for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, it is recommended to **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and of the system.**

Settings specific to connected navigation

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

Select "**Map**".

Activate or deactivate:
- "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".
- "**Guidance to final destination on foot**"
- "**Display recommended speed**"

These settings must be made according to each profile.

Select "**Alerts**".

Activate or deactivate:
- "**Advise of car park nearby**", "**Filling station alert**", "**Risk areas alert**", "**Accident black spot alert**" then select the alert symbol, "**Give an audible warning**", "**Advise proximity of POI 1**", "**Advise proximity of POI 2**".

To have access to connected navigation, select the option: "**Authorise sending information**" in "Settings".

It is possible to access the "Notifications" at any time in the upper bar.

The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Notification of "Danger zones"

To issue notification of danger zones, select the option: "**Allow notification of danger zones**".

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**Report a new danger zone**" button located in the side bars or the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment).

Select the option "**Type**" to choose the type of "Danger zone".

Select the "**Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to save and distribute the information.

Authorising sending information

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**System settings**".

Select the "**Privacy mode**" tab.

Activate or deactivate:
- "**No sharing (data, vehicle position)**".
- "**Data sharing only**"
- "**Sharing data and the vehicle position**"

"Danger zones" pack updates

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**System settings**".

Select the "**System info**" tab.

Select "**View**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Select "**Update(s) due**".

It is possible to download system and map updates from the Brand's website.
The update procedure is also available there.

After the updates have downloaded, installation on the vehicle must be done with the engine running and vehicle stationary.

Displaying the weather

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press this button to display the list of services.

Select "**View map**".

Select "**Weather**".

Press this button to display primary information.

Press this button to display the detailed weather information.

The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with the **CarPlay**®, **MirrorLink**™ or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows users to display applications adapted to the CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto technology of the smartphone on the vehicle screen. For the CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must be activated on the smartphone beforehand.
For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work, it is essential in all cases that the smartphone is unlocked.
As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, as well as the date and time of the smartphone and of the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's national website.

Connectivity

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay**®, **MirrorLink**™ or **Android Auto** functions.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

Press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the CarPlay® function.

Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode, a change of source will have to be done manually.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

The "**MirrorLink™**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.

When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.

Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to the smartphone and compatible with the MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of the network.

Android Auto smartphone connection

The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "Android Auto" function.

Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

In Android Auto mode, the function to display the menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers is deactivated.

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of the network.

Vehicle apps

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Vehicle apps**" to display the applications home page.

Internet browser

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet browser**" function.

Press "**Internet browser**" to display the browser home page.

Select the country of residence.

OK Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Bluetooth connection®

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection**".

Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Depending on the type of telephone, the option is given to accept or not accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on the smartphone.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection by the smartphone's Wi-Fi.

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

WIFI Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

Select the "**Secured**" or "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

Select a network.

Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start the connection.

The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

Wi-Fi connection sharing

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Wi-Fi connection sharing**".

Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And/or

Select the "**Settings**" tab to change the name of the system network and the password.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

To protect against unauthorised access and to make the set of systems as secure as possible, the use of a security code or a complex password is recommended.

Managing connections

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function, you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press "**Frequency**".

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the slider for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".

Enter the values using the virtual keypad.
First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This behaviour is normal in the propagation of radio waves and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
(refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".

Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Changing waveband

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

To change the waveband, press "Band…" displayed at the top right of the screen.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/deactivate "**Station tracking**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies.
However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory.
This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

i The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/deactivate "**Display radio text**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Play TA messages

! The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages.
To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".

Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality sound. The different "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press "Band…" at the top right of the screen to display the "**DAB**" waveband.

DAB-FM tracking

i "DAB" does not cover 100 % of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB tracking**".

Activate/deactivate "**Station tracking**".

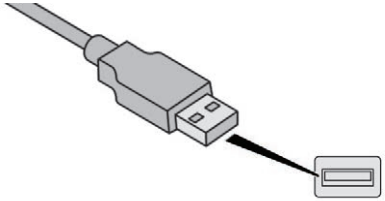
OK Press "**OK**".

i If "DAB-FM auto tracking" is activated, there may be a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM ("**DAB-FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB-FM auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB socket



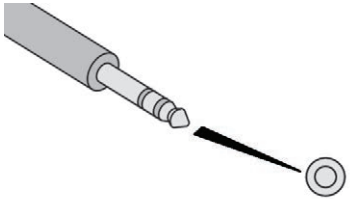
Insert the USB memory stick in the USB socket or connect the USB device to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
Management of the controls is via the portable device.

CD player

Depending on equipment

Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Source**".

Choose the source.

Watching a video

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB socket.

Video control commands are accessible only through the touch screen.

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Sources**".

Select **Video** to start the video.

To remove the USB memory stick, press the pause button to stop the video, then remove the memory stick.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated ; first adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of the audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist.
To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via the USB sockets. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Device management is via the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is recommended that file names are less than 20 characters long and do not contain any special characters (e.g. « » ? . ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

CD player (depending on equipment).
In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2, or Joliet, if possible, when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press "**Bluetooth search**".

Or

Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Audio streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

Activation of the "**Mobile internet data**" profile is obligatory for connected navigation having first activated sharing of this connection on the smartphone.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, the option is given to accept or not accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press the "details" button.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone.
All three profiles may connect by default.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the user guide for the telephone and with the service provider for the available services.

The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a device as well as the deletion of a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted telephone button to accept an incoming call.

And

Make a long press

on the steering mounted telephone button to reject the call.

Or

Select "**End call**" on the touch screen.

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or make a long press

on the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or

Make a long press

on the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone ; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts/entries

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Select "**Contact**".

Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.

Select the "**All**" or "**Received**" or "**Sent**" tab.

Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists.

Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.

Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Press "**Play**" to hear the message.

Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.
Depending on the smartphone, access to messages or email may be slow.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used.
Check the user guide for the smartphone and with the service provider for the available services.

Managing quick messages

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.

Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.

Press "**Create**" to write a new message.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.

Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).

Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.

Select the "**Received**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.

Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

! Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

Settings

Audio settings

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambiences**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

! The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.

i The **Ambience** (6 optional ambiences) and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** audio settings are different and independent for each audio source.
Activate or deactivate "**Loudness**".
The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources.
Activate or deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

i On-board audio: the Arkamys Sound Staging© optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

Setting the profiles

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.

Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB socket.
Select the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

The location for the photograph is square ; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.

00.0 Press this button to reinitialise the profile selected.

Reinitialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.

Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambiences**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

Modifying system settings

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".

Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic text scrolling**".

Select "**Brightness**".

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

Resetting the system to "Factory settings" activates English by default, as well as degrees Fahrenheit, and turns off summer time.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Selecting the language

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Set time-date**".

Select "**Date**".

Press this button to define the date.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Select the display format of the date.

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Set time-date**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to define the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).

Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Colour schemes

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Select "**Colour schemes**".

Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

Every time the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Navigation

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may be in conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll road).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger zones" does not work.	The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.	Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the audio settings.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select setting for the "Traffic info " function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger zone" alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all "Danger zones" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger zones" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to see the exact position of the "Danger zone". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.	This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.

The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.	During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.	Check that the connected services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list. Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, etc.). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content if it is a burned CD: consult the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system CD player does not play DVDs. Due to poor quality, certain burned CDs will not be played by the audio system.

There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	Upon insertion of a new external media, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This is perfectly normal.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	It is possible to check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).
The sound from the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close windows, reduce ventilation, slow down, etc.).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronising contacts are: synchronise the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Change the telephone directory display settings.
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the equalizer setting is deselected. When changing the equalizer setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. It is recommended that the audio settings (Bass:, Treble:, Balance) be adjusted to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Start then vehicle’s engine to increase the charge of the battery.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu / Options / Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

180° rear vision 183

A

ABS 110
Accessories 107
Access to the 3rd row 65-66
Access to the spare wheel 207
Active Safety Brake 17, 171-173
AdBlue® 15-16, 25, 196
AdBlue® tank 198
Additive, Diesel 14, 193, 195
Adjusting headlamp beam height 102
Adjusting headlamps 102
Adjusting head restraints 56
Adjusting seat 54-56
Adjusting the air distribution 88-89
Adjusting the air flow 88-89
Adjusting the date 30
Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel 58
Adjusting the lumbar support 55
Adjusting the seat angle 54, 56
Adjusting the seat belt height 114
Adjusting the temperature 88-89
Adjusting the time 30
Advanced Grip Control 112-113
Advice on driving 7, 138-139
Airbags 18, 117, 119-120, 122
Airbags, curtain 118-120
Airbags, front 118-119, 122
Airbags, lateral 118, 120
Air conditioning 86, 88, 88-89, 92
Air conditioning, digital 91
Air conditioning, dual-zone automatic 88-89
Air conditioning, manual 87, 90
Air intake 88-90
Air vents 86
Alarm 51-52
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 109-110
Anti-pinch 82
Antitheft / Immobiliser 33
Area, loading 33-34, 42-43, 80
Armrest 75
Armrest, front 57
Assistance call 108-109
Assistance, emergency braking 109-110, 173
Audible warning 109

B

Battery 189, 219-222
Battery, 12 V 194, 219-220
Battery capacity 219
Battery, charging 221
Battery, remote control 40, 94
Bench seat, one-piece, fixed 64-65
Blind, panoramic roof 82
Blind spot monitoring system 21, 178
Blind spot monitoring system, active 21
Blind spot sensors 21, 176
Blinds, side 82
BlueHDi 13, 15, 25, 194, 200
Bonnet 190-191
Boot 50
Boot lid 37-38, 40, 50
Brake discs 195
Brake lamps 214-216
Brakes 11-12, 195
Braking assistance system 109-110
Braking, automatic emergency 17, 171-173
Bulbs 211
Bulbs (changing) 211, 214

C

Capacity, fuel tank 185-187
Cap, fuel filler 185-187
Central locking 31, 37
Changing a bulb 211, 214-216
Changing a bulb (side-hinged doors) 214
Changing a fuse 217-219
Changing a wheel 206
Changing a wiper blade 105-106
Changing the remote control battery 40
Checking the engine oil level 24-25
Checking the levels 191-193
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) 202-205
Checks 191, 194-195
Checks, routine 194-195
Child lock 136-137
Child lock, electric 136
Child lock on rear windows 137
Children 124, 130-136
Children (safety) 136
Child seats 116-117, 120-128
Child seats, conventional 123-128
Child seats, ISOFIX 130-136
Closing the boot 50
Closing the doors 31, 37, 49-50
Collision Risk Alert 171-172
Compressor, tyre inflation 202
Container, AdBlue® 197
Control, emergency boot release 40
Control, emergency door 32, 38-39
Control, heated seats 57
Control stalk, lighting 97
Control stalk, wipers 103-104
Courtesy lamp 95
Courtesy lamp, front 95-96, 216
Courtesy lamp, rear 95-96, 216
Courtesy lamps 95-96, 216
Cover, load space 79
Crew cab, fixed 73-74
Crew cab, folding 74

Cruise control.....159, 161-162, 164-167
Cruise control, adaptive..... 162, 167, 170-171
Cruise control by speed limit recognition.....161-162
Cruise control, dynamic with Stop function.....161-162
Cup holder.....75

D

Date (setting).....30
Daytime running lamps..... 97, 99, 211-213
Deactivating the passenger airbag..... 118, 122
Deactivation of DSC (ESC)..... 111
Deadlocking 37-38
Defrosting.....60, 90-91
Demisting 90-91
Demisting, rear.....91
Demisting, rear screen 91
Dimensions 228
Dipstick..... 24-25, 192
Direction indicators.....98, 211-214, 216
Display, head-up 158-159
Door pockets..... 75-76
Doors, rear 49-50
Doors, side-hinged 37-38, 49-50, 214-215
Driver's attention warning..... 175
Driving 138-139
Driving abroad.....97
Driving aids camera (warnings).....157
Driving aids (recommendations).....156
Driving economically.....7
Dynamic stability control (DSC)..... 17, 109-113

E

EBFD..... 110
Eco-driving (advice).....7
Economy mode 189
Electric windows 53
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).....109-110
Emergency braking assistance (EBA)...109-110
Emergency call 108-109
Emergency warning lamps 108, 200
Emissions control system, SCR 26, 196
Energy economy mode.....189
Engine compartment 191
Engine, Diesel.....13, 18, 185, 191, 200, 225
Engines 224
Engine self-diagnosis 16
Environment.....7, 40, 94
ESC (electronic stability control) 109

F

Fatigue detection 175
Filling the AdBlue® tank 194, 198
Filling the fuel tank.....185-187
Filter, air 194
Filter, Diesel fuel 191
Filter, oil.....194
Filter, particle 193, 195
Filter, passenger compartment.....86, 194
Finisher 210
Fitting a wheel..... 208-210
Fitting roof bars.....189
Fittings, interior 75-76, 81
Fittings, rear.....81
Fitting the mat 75
Flap, fuel filler.....185-187
Flap, removable 60-62
Flashing indicators.....98
Floor cab 216
Fluid, brake 193
Fluid, engine coolant.....193
Fluid, power steering 193
Foglamp, rear..... 19, 214, 216
Foglamps, front..... 97-98, 100, 214
Foglamps, rear.....97-98
Fuel.....7, 185
Fuel consumption.....7, 29
Fuel tank.....185
Fusebox, engine compartment.....219
Fuses.....217-219

G

Gauge, fuel.....185-187
Gearbox, automatic 145-150, 153-154, 195
Gearbox, electronic 145, 150-152, 195
Gearbox, manual 145-146, 153-154, 195
Gear lever, automatic gearbox 147-150
Gear lever, electronic gearbox 195
Gear lever, manual gearbox 145-146
Gear shift indicator ~ Gear efficiency indicator 146
Glove box 76

H

Hazard warning lamps....108, 200
Hazard warning lamps,
automatic operation....108
headlamp adjustment....102
Headlamp adjustment....102
Headlamp beam height....102
Headlamps, automatic dipping....20, 101, 174
Headlamps, automatic illumination....99
Headlamps, dipped beam....20, 97, 211-213
Headlamps, halogen....211-212
Headlamps, main beam....20, 22, 97, 211-213
Headlamps, Xenon....213
Headlamp wash....104
Head restraints, front....56
Head-up display....158-159
Heated bench seat....57
Heating....86-87, 92-94
Heating, additional....51, 92-94
Heating, programmable....51, 92-94
Hill start assist....144-145
Horn....109

I

Ignition....142-143
Ignition on....143
Immobiliser, electronic....140
Indicator, AdBlue® range....25
Indicator, coolant temperature....24
Indicator, engine oil level....24-25
Indicator lamps, operation....97
Indicators, direction....98
Inflating tyres....196
Inflating tyres and accessories
(using the kit)....202-205
Infrared camera....157
Instrument panel....9, 158
Intelligent Traction Control....110
ISOFIX....130, 132-136

J

Jack....78, 206
Jump starting....220

K

Key....31, 33-36, 38-39
Key, electronic....31, 143
Keyless Entry and Starting....31-38, 141, 143
Key with remote control....36-37, 140
Kit, puncture repair....203-205
Kit, temporary puncture repair....202-205

L

Labels....5, 63-64
Labels, identification....231
Lane Departure Warning
System (LDWS)....174-175
Level, AdBlue®....194
Level, brake fluid....193
Level, Diesel additive....193, 195
Level, engine coolant....24, 193
Level, engine oil....24-25, 192
Level, headlamp wash....105, 193
Level, power steering fluid....193
Levels and checks....191-193
Level, screenwash fluid....105, 193
Lighting....97
Lighting, cornering....100
Lighting dimmer....27
Lighting, directional....100
Lighting, guide-me home....99
Lighting, interior....95, 102
Lighting, mood....102
Lighting, welcome....99-100
Loading....80, 189
Loading area fittings....79
Load reduction mode....189
Load restraint....79
Locating your vehicle....32
Locking....31, 33, 36-37
Locking from the inside....41-43
Locking the doors....41-42
Low fuel level....185-187
Lumbar....55, 58

M

Maintenance, routine....158, 194
Manoeuvring aids (recommendations)....156
Map reading lamps....95
Markings, identification....231
Massage function....58
Mat....75, 141, 158
Memorising a speed....159
Mirror, rear view....60
Mirrors, door....59-60, 91, 176, 178
Misfuel prevention....187
Moduwork....60-62
Mountings, ISOFIX....129, 132-136

N

Net, cargo....60-62
Net, high load retaining....81
Net, luggage retaining....78
Number plate lamps....216

O

Obstacle detection 178
Oil change 192
Oil consumption 192
OII, engine 192
On-board tools 201-202
Opening the bonnet 190-191
Opening the boot 31-32, 50
Opening the doors 31-32, 43-44
Opening to 180° 49-50

P

Pads, brake 195
Paint 231
Paint colour code 231
Panoramic glass sunroof 82
Parcel shelf, rear 76
Parking brake 144, 195
Parking sensors, audible and visual 178
Parking sensors, front 179
Parking sensors, rear 178
Plates, identification 231
Port, USB 77
Power steering 19
Pre-heater, Diesel 18
Pressures, tyres 196, 203, 205
Pre-tensioning seat belts 116-117
Priming pump 200-201
Priming the fuel system 200
Protecting children 118, 120-124, 130-136
Puncture 202-203, 205-206

R

Radar (warnings) 156
Range 29
Range, AdBlue 15, 25, 194
Rear screen, demisting 91
Recharging the battery 221
Recirculation, air 88-90
Reduction of electrical load 189
Regeneration of the particle filter 195
Reinitialisation of the under-
inflation detection system 155
Reinitialising the remote control 40
Reminder, key in ignition 142
Reminder, lighting on 98
Remote control 31-36, 38, 140
Removing a wheel 208-210
Removing the mat 75
Replacing bulbs 211, 213-216
Replacing fuses 217-218
Replacing the air filter 194
Replacing the oil filter 194
Replacing the passenger
compartment filter 194
Reservoir, headlamp wash 193
Reservoir, screenwash 193
Resetting the service indicator 23
Resetting the trip recorder 27
Reversing camera 157, 180, 183
Reversing camera (on interior mirror) 180
Reversing lamp 214, 216
Roof bars 189
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 200

S

Safety, children 118, 120-124, 130-136
Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel) 195
Screen, instrument panel 28
Screenwash 104
Screenwash, rear 104
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) 26, 196
Seat and bench seat, rear, fixed ... 63-64, 66-67
Seat and bench seat, rear,
on rails 63-64, 68-70
Seat angle 54
Seat belts 12, 113-117, 123
Seat belts, rear 115
Seat, bench front, 2-seat 56, 114
Seat, rear bench 63-64
Seats, electric 55-56
Seats, front 54-56
Seats, heated 57
Seat(s), individual, rear, on rails 71-72, 115
Seats, rear 64-70, 122
Selector, gear 146, 150-152
Sensors (warnings) 157
Serial number, vehicle 231
Service indicator 23-24
Servicing 13, 23, 23-24, 194
Sidelamps 97, 211-214, 216
Side repeater 214
Sliding side door, electric 37-38, 43-47
Sliding side door, hands-free 47-49
Sliding side window 82
Snow chains 155, 187-188, 208
Snow chains, link 188, 208
Socket, 12 V accessory 77
Socket, 220 V 78
Socket, Jack 78
Sockets, audio 77-78
Sockets, auxiliary 78
Speed limiter 159, 161-164
Speed limit
recognition 160-161, 163, 166, 170-171
Speedometer 158

Stability control (ESC)..... 109-110, 112-113
Starting a Diesel engine 185
Starting the engine 140
Starting the vehicle..... 141, 143, 145, 147-152
Starting using another battery.....220
Stay, bonnet 191
Steering wheel, adjustment 58
Stopping the vehicle 141, 143, 147-152
Stop & Start.....21, 29, 87, 152-154, 185, 190, 194, 222
Storage..... 56, 63, 73-76
Storage compartments 76
Storage wells 73-74, 76
Stowing rings 79
Sunshine sensor 86
Switching off the engine 140, 142
Synchronising the remote control.....40

T

Table of weights 225
Table position.....55
Table, retractable sliding.....83-85
Tables, aircraft 76
Tables of fuses 217-219
Table top, working.....63
Tailgate rear screen 50
Tank, fuel.....185-187
Technical data.....225
Temperature, coolant.....12, 24
Textured Paint 199
Third brake lamp 215
Time (setting) 30
Tool box..... 201-202
Tools..... 202, 206
Topping-up AdBlue®.....198
Top Rear Vision.....180
Total distance recorder 27
Towbar.....188
Towed loads 224-225
Towing another vehicle 222-223
Towing eye 222
Traction control (ASR) 17, 109-113
Trailer 188
Trajectory control systems.....109-110
Triangle, warning.....200
Trip computer 28-29
Trip distance recorder.....27
Tyres.....196
Tyre under-inflation detection 18, 154-155, 205, 210

U

Under-inflation (detection) 154
Unlocking 31-32, 34-36
Unlocking from the inside 41-43
Unlocking, selective.....33-36
Unlocking the doors.....41-42
Unlocking, total 33-36
Updating the date.....30
Updating the time.....30
USB 77

V

Ventilation 86-87, 90, 92, 94

W

Warning and indicator lamps 10-11
Warning lamp, airbag.....18
Warning lamp, braking system 11-12
Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater 18
Warning lamp, driver''s seat belt not fastened..... 115
Warning lamp, low fuel level 19
Warning lamp, parking brake.....12
Warning lamps 11
Warning lamp, seat belts 12, 115
Warning lamp, Service.....13
Warnings and indicators 10-11
Washer jets, heated 91
Washing 158
Weights 224-225
Welcome lighting.....32
Wheel, spare..... 155, 196, 206-207, 210
Windows, rear 82
Windscreen, heated.....91
Wiper blades (changing)..... 105-106
Wiper, rear.....104
Wipers 20, 103-104
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive..... 103-104

Automobiles CITROËN declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

4Dconcept
Xerox
Interak

Printed in the EU
English

12-18

Automobiles CITROËN
Siège social : 7, rue Henri Sainte-Claire Déville - 92500 RUEIL-MALMAISON
www.citroen.com
Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. NANTERRE : 642 050 199

CITROËN

INSPIRED BY YOU

AN. 18K0C.0040